SACO
Participants' Manual

Adam L. Schiff
University of Washington Libraries

for the Program for Cooperative Cataloging

Second Edition
revised by the
PCC Standing Committee on Training
Task Group to Update the *SACO Participants’ Manual*

(with minor revisions, February 28, 2019)

Program for Cooperative Cataloging
Washington, D.C.
2007
PCC Standing Committee on Training
Task Group to Update the SACO Participants’ Manual

Adam L. Schiff (Chair), University of Washington
Karen Jensen, McGill University
John N. Mitchell, Library of Congress
Kay Teel, Stanford University
Alex Thurman, Columbia University
Melanie Wacker, Columbia University
# Table of Contents

- Acknowledgments for the Second Edition  v
- Acknowledgments for the First Edition   vi
- Introduction   1
- Why Participate in SACO?   4
- SACO Documentation   6
- Practicalities  7
- Subject Headings  13
  - When to Make a SACO Proposal  14
  - Authority Research for Subjects  16
  - Subject Authority Proposal Form  18
- Guidelines for Formulating LC Subject Heading Proposals  20
- Examples of Decisions Involved in Making New Subject Proposals  23
  - Examples A-D: Headings Supplying More Appropriate Level of Specificity  25
    - Log-periodic antennas  25
    - Systems librarians  26
    - Cataloging of cartographic materials  27
    - Chinese mitten crab  29
  - Examples E-J: Headings for Genres and Forms  31
    - Medical drama  31
    - Romantic comedy films  33
    - Reggaetón  35
    - Khim and Khim music  37
    - Banjo and double bass music  39
    - Cootie catchers  40
  - Examples K-L: Headings Based on an Existing Pattern  42
    - This (The English word)  42
    - Historical fiction, Chilean  43
  - Examples M-S: Headings for Geographic Places  44
    - Madhupur Jungle (Bangladesh)  44
    - Aleknagik, Lake (Alaska)  46
    - Auyuittuq National Park (Nunavut)  48
    - Fort Worden State Park (Port Townsend, Wash.)  50
    - Chiles Volcano (Colombia and Ecuador)  51
    - Lusatian Mountains  54
    - Spring Lake (Hays County, Tex.)  56
    - Bluewater Lake (Minn.)  59
    - Cavanaugh, Lake (Wash. : Lake)  61
    - Diamond Lake (Pend Oreille County, Wash. : Lake)  63
    - Rock River (Yukon)  64
  - Examples T-V: Headings for Named Buildings, Building Details, and Structures  66
    - Carnegie Mansion (New York, N.Y.)  66
    - Old Senate Chamber (United States Capitol, Washington, D.C.)  67
    - Fountain Square (Cincinnati, Ohio)  69
Videorecordings 138
Cartographic Materials 138
Visual Resources 138
Bibliographic Databases 139
Remote Electronic Resources 140
Personal Correspondence 142
675: Source Data Not Found 144
680: General Public Notes (Scope Notes) 145
681: Subject Example Tracing Note 147
682: Deleted Heading Note 149
781: Subdivision Heading Linking Entry--Geographic Subdivision 150
952: Local Notes 151
953: Cataloger Code 154
Subject Heading Change Proposals 155
  When to Make a Change Proposal 156
  LCSH Subject Change Proposal Form 158
  LC Subject Heading Change Guidelines 159
Examples of Subject Heading Change Proposals 162
  Examples A-C: Adding cross-references (used for references) 162
  Example D: Adding a see also related term reference 166
  Example E: Adding a broader term reference 167
  Examples F-H: Changing the authorized form of heading 169
  Examples I-J: Revising an 053 Field 173
  Example K: Revision of references 176
Classification 178
  Why Submit Classification Proposals? 179
  Classification Proposals 180
  Sample Pages from Tentative Weekly List 184
  Sample Pages from Approved Weekly List 186
  LC Classification Proposal Form 188
Examples of Classification Proposals Using the Paper Proposal Form 192
  Example A: New Cutter number 192
  Example B: New Cutter number plus see reference from one entry to another 195
  Example C: New Cutter number in a table; pattern cited 197
  Example D: New Cutter number; hierarchical Cutters 200
  Example E: New whole number; anchor point above 202
  Example F: New whole number; anchor point below 204
  Example G: New decimal number; anchor point above 207
  Example H: New decimal number; pattern cited 209
  Example I: New decimal number; anchor point below 212
  Example J: New decimal number; caption including explanatory note 214
  Example K: Whole and decimal numbers; pattern cited 217
  Example L: Multiple decimal numbers; pattern cited 220
  Example M: Changing a caption 223
  Example N: Changing (adding to) a caption and adding a see reference 225
Example O: Changing (adding to) a caption and adding a see reference across a range of numbers  227
Example P: See references for pseudonyms of literary authors  229
Example Q: Creating a new number and changing the indentation of a range of numbers beneath it  232
Example R: Splitting one number into multiple numbers  234
Example S: Extensive revisions  238
Example T: Canceling (invalidating) a number  241

Glossary of Terms, Abbreviations, and Acronyms  244
Appendix A: Additional Examples of SACO Proposals for New LCSH  251
  100 (Personal Name)  251
  110 (Corporate Name)  253
  130 (Uniform Title)  260
  150 (Topical Term)  262
  151 (Geographic Name)  285
Appendix B: MARC Organization Codes Used in Examples  297
Acknowledgments for the Second Edition

The Task Group to Update the SACO Participants’ Manual wishes to thank the members of the Standing Committee on Training for its review of this new edition. In particular, thanks are due Steven Arakawa for his detailed comments and suggestions.

Thanks are also due Claudia Hill, Harvard University, who provided the task group with extensive comments on the first edition, and gave particular attention to improving the coverage of establishing headings for buildings, structures, etc. Michael Chopy, University of Hawaii, also provided helpful suggestions.

Once again, the staff in LC’s Cataloging Policy and Support Office have helped greatly in making this manual an accurate and useful reflection of LC’s policies for establishing subject headings. Lynn El-Hoshy, Millicent Wewerka, Geraldine Ostrove, and Paul G. Weiss all reviewed the final draft and provided extensive comments and corrections.

Please send reports of any errors or omissions, and suggestions for improvements to future editions of the manual, to the Chair of the PCC Standing Committee on Training (http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/training.html).
Acknowledgments for the First Edition

Numerous people deserve thanks for their encouragement and help with this project. The University of Washington Libraries supported my work on this book and served as a testing laboratory for some of its parts. Carolyn Aamot, Lili Angel, Kathleen Forsythe, Gloria Jeffcott, Allen Maberry, and Barbara Petite of the Monographic Services Division all provided invaluable technical support.

Several people reviewed an early draft of the manual and provided important feedback: Linda Gabel and Susan Westberg at OCLC; Bruce Trumble of Harvard University; Cecilia Botero, University of Florida. Helpful comments and criticisms of a later draft were provided by Lori Robare and Carol Hixson of the University of Oregon. Carol, in her role as chair of the PCC Standing Committee on Training, encouraged me to take my time and do things right, which I hope she and others will agree I have done.

This work would not be what it is were it not for the support and guidance of colleagues at the Library of Congress. Ruta Penkiunas, Ana Cristán, and John Mitchell of the Cooperative Cataloging Team all provided feedback and helped in innumerable ways. In particular, much of what I've learned about SACO and how to create good proposals has come from John Mitchell, who has been my SACO liaison at LC for many years. I've learned much from John's wise and thoughtful counsel.

The staff in LC's Cataloging Policy and Support Office have been an enormous help in making this manual as useful and accurate as I hope it is. Detailed comments, corrections, and suggestions were received from Larry Buzard, Lynn El-Hoshy, Ron Goudreau, Mary Kay Pietris, and Millie Wewerka. In particular, Lynn El-Hoshy went over the manuscript with a fine-tooth comb, catching typos, errors, and misunderstandings large and small, and educating me about LC policy and practice in the process. Lynn's extensive suggestions have made the manual much better than it would otherwise have been. Lynn has long been an important mentor to me, always willing to take time to engage in discussions and explanations of LC subject cataloging policy in person and over email.

Any errors of omission or commission are mine, and I would appreciate learning of them so that they can be corrected in a future edition.

Adam L. Schiff
Principal Cataloger
University of Washington Libraries
Monographic Services Division
Box 352900
Seattle, WA 98195-2900 USA
Phone: (206) 543-8409
Fax: (206) 685-8782
Email: aschiff@u.washington.edu
Introduction

The Library of Congress (LC) is involved with a number of different cooperative cataloging enterprises. The Subject Authority Cooperative Program (SACO) is one of these projects. SACO is one of the four constituents of the Program for Cooperative Cataloging (PCC), the others being NACO (Name Authority Cooperative Project), CONSER (Cooperative Online Serials Program), and BIBCO (Monographic Bibliographic Record Program).

SACO was established to provide a means for libraries to propose new Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH) and LC Classification (LCC) numbers. It also allows libraries to submit change proposals for existing subject headings and classification. Proposals are submitted through the Regional and Cooperative Cataloging Division at LC and are reviewed weekly by the Cataloging Policy and Support Office. Approved subject headings are distributed as subject authority records by the Cataloging Distribution Service (CDS) to bibliographic utilities and other subscribers and are available via the Web through the Library of Congress Authorities site and the Classification Web online service. They are also included in the printed Library of Congress Subject Headings that is published annually. Approved classification proposals are incorporated into the LC Classification schedules, which are issued irregularly in print but are updated daily online in Classification Web.

This manual is intended as an overview of SACO policies and procedures and as a guide to creating SACO proposals. It is not intended to replace essential existing documentation such as the Subject Cataloging Manual (SCM). Although information from the Subject Cataloging Manual is included throughout, this manual frequently refers the user to the more detailed information and explanations found there, expecting that catalogers will consult it as necessary. Almost all examples included within this manual are taken from actual headings and classification numbers proposed or modified by SACO participants. In a few instances, for pedagogical reasons, examples in this manual have been modified slightly from how they appeared in actual authority records.

In 2004, SACO became a institutional membership-based program of the PCC. Members of any of the other PCC programs are automatically considered to be SACO members. Other libraries wishing to participate in SACO must either:

1) submit an application for institutional SACO membership, available on the SACO home page at http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/sacoappl.html, and commit to submitting 10-12 proposals (of any kind) per year.

2) join or form a SACO funnel project. Funnel projects consist of a group of libraries (or catalogers from various libraries) that have joined together to contribute subject authority records and/or classification numbers. Proposals are funneled through the coordinator of the project, who then sends them on to LC. Funnel projects typically bring together libraries in a geographic region or with a specific subject focus. Current SACO funnel projects include the African American Subject Funnel Project, the Africana
Subject Funnel Project, and the Hawaii/Pacific Subject Authority Funnel Project. Further information about funnels is available on the SACO home page.

3) contact an institution that is already a SACO member and request that they submit the proposal through their contribution mechanism.

There are no formal training requirements for participation in SACO. However, libraries making proposals are expected to have access to and familiarity with the key documentation containing the policies and practices used by LC in subject heading and classification assignment and in the creation of new subject headings and classification numbers.

Libraries submitting proposals must have a MARC organization code (formerly called NUC symbol or USMARC code) assigned to them by the Library of Congress, or for Canadian libraries, by Library and Archives Canada. A complete list of MARC organization codes is available through the LC’s Network Development and MARC Standards Office home page at http://www.loc.gov/marc/organizations/ along with information on how to request a new code. Canadian library symbols can be searched at http://www.collectionscanada.ca/illcandir-bin/illsear/l=0/c=1. Instructions for requesting a code from Library and Archives Canada may be found on its Interlibrary Loan home page at http://www.collectionscanada.ca/ill/s16-206-e.html#3.2.2.

LC staff provide free general and specialized SACO training at workshops held during conferences of the American Library Association and other organizations. While these workshops are not required in order to participate in the SACO program, catalogers interested in further training are encouraged to register for them. Announcements of workshops are made on electronic discussion lists such as AUTOCAT and on the SACO home page.

There is an electronic discussion list for SACO, called appropriately enough, SACOLIST. Information about subscribing to the list can be found on the SACO home page at http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/sacolist.html. Once subscribed, email postings can be sent to all list members by using the address sacolist@loc.gov.

LC accepts SACO proposals in a variety of forms. Subject headings can be submitted via mail, fax, email, or via a Web form on the SACO home page. Proposals submitted using the Web form receive expedited processing. Classification proposals may be submitted via mail, email, or fax. Subscribers to Classification Web are expected to use a new (as of November 2006) online classification proposal system to submit their classification proposals. SACO proposals are sent to the Library of Congress Cooperative Cataloging Team:

Cooperative Cataloging Team
Regional and Cooperative Cataloging Division
Library of Congress
Washington, DC  20540-4382 USA
Introduction

Phone: (202) 707-2822
Fax: (202) 252-2082 or (202) 707-2824
Email: saco@loc.gov
URL: http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/saco.html
Why Participate in SACO?

During the 1980s, catalogers from outside the Library of Congress had no easy means to suggest additions or changes to LCSH and LCC. LCSH and LCC were constructed solely on the basis of materials in LC’s collections. If a library using LCSH and/or LCC acquired an item on a topic that was not covered by materials in LC’s collections and not represented within the existing subject heading list or classification schedules, it had to assign subject headings and/or classification numbers that were not as specific as they needed, or it had to maintain a supplemental list of locally-created headings and classification numbers. With automation and the availability of distributed shared records in bibliographic utilities, the possibilities of cooperation in subject authority creation began to be explored by the Library of Congress and outside libraries. The Library of Congress realized that it could take advantage of bibliographic and authority records created by other libraries and that cooperation was a cost-effective means of developing and enhancing LCSH and LCC.

Why might an outside library consider participating in SACO?

- existing LCSH and LCC are not always adequate
- LC’s collections and those of other libraries are not the same; a library might collect in subjects not collected by LC or at a much greater depth than LC; new disciplines and topics are always emerging
- participation allows catalogers to assign subject headings at the appropriate level of specificity; catalogers no longer have to assign headings or classification numbers that are too broad for the item being cataloged
- cooperative cataloging benefits the entire library community and allows even small libraries and highly specialized libraries to share their knowledge and expertise with more general libraries; everyone can contribute to developing a shared authority file and LCSH and LCC become more representative of everyone’s collections
- by getting new headings into LCSH and establishing new numbers in LCC, libraries don't have to maintain specialized locally-created lists of headings and classification numbers
- headings contributed by SACO participants frequently get used by LC and other libraries for materials that they acquire; outside libraries often receive and catalog materials needing new subjects or classification numbers more quickly than LC can
- libraries can add useful cross-references to existing headings and change obsolete terms to more current terminology
Why Participate in SACO?

- establishing new numbers and Cutters in LCC means that all libraries using LCC will use the same numbers for materials on the same subject, making copy cataloging and shelflisting simpler and more reliable.

- it serves users' needs.

- it is intellectually stimulating and satisfying to do research and to see one's work included in the national authority file and LCSH/LCC.

- participation requirements in SACO are kept at a minimum to allow as many libraries to contribute as possible. There are no formal training requirements and SACO participants need not belong to a particular bibliographic utility nor even catalog in an online environment in order to submit subject heading and classification proposals.
SACO Documentation

SACO Documentation

SACO participants are expected to have access to the online Library of Congress authority files for searching purposes. These files are available via bibliographic utilities such as OCLC and from some integrated library system vendors. LC authority records are also available free of charge for browsing and downloading via the Library of Congress Authorities Web site at http://authorities.loc.gov/. They are also searchable through the Classification Web product available from the LC’s Cataloging Distribution Service.

Participants are expected to use the most current edition (including updates where applicable) of the following publications, which are available from the Cataloging Distribution Service.

For subject headings:


*Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings.* Updated twice a year. Available in loose-leaf and through the Cataloger's Desktop Web product.

*Free-Floating Subdivisions: An Alphabetical Index.* Issued annually in print.


For classification numbers:

*Library of Congress Classification* schedules. Issued irregularly in print by CDS and also available in annual printed editions from other commercial publishers. Updated daily online via the Classification Web product. Weekly lists of new and changed classification numbers are available at http://www.loc.gov/aba/cataloging/classification/weeklylists/.

*Subject Cataloging Manual: Classification.* Updated irregularly. Available in loose-leaf and through the Cataloger's Desktop Web product.
Practicalities

This section deals with practical aspects of SACO participation and organization of workflow within a SACO library. Each institution will of course need to develop policies and procedures that work for its particular situation.

Coordinators

Libraries should designate a SACO coordinator to act as liaison between their institution and the Library of Congress Cooperative Cataloging Team. In turn, NACO institutions and regular SACO contributors will have a liaison from the Coop Team assigned to their library. This facilitates communication in both directions. The coordinator can act as the chief SACO expert in libraries that have more than one cataloger who will be making subject proposals. He or she may train other staff in subject cataloging and SACO policies, review proposals from individual catalogers before they are sent to LC, and announce when proposals have been approved. The coordinator can be responsible for monitoring the SACO home page and SACOLIST electronic discussion list to stay abreast of news and other developments related to SACO and subject cataloging. A coordinator can maintain a central file of in-process proposals, which may be useful for gathering local statistics and for checking on the status of proposals with LC staff.

Cooperative Cataloging Team

Cooperative Cataloging Team staff review SACO proposals when received, and provide advice and direction to libraries considering making a specific proposal. The Coop Team members are happy to take questions about subject cataloging policy at LC and are willing to help a library formulate a heading proposal so that it is likely to be approved in the editorial process. Personal interaction between SACO coordinators and Coop Cat liaisons mitigates apprehension on the part of program participants about dealing with a large impersonal bureaucracy. When a SACO library does not have an assigned liaison, Coop. Cat. staff will respond to questions and proposals sent to the general SACO account (saco@loc.gov).

Direct Contribution vs. Funnel Contribution

There are several options for organizing contributions to SACO. Proposals can be submitted directly to LC via mail, email, fax, or Web form (available on the SACO home page) from the SACO coordinator at an institution. Proposals submitted via the Web form are given expedited processing and are highly encouraged over the other means of submission. Direct submission of proposals is the method employed by individual libraries of all types and sizes, but is used particularly by institutions that make at least 12 SACO proposals each year.

Another option for SACO contribution has proved attractive to some libraries. Libraries (or individual catalogers at various libraries) in a particular geographic area, and institutions whose focus is on a specific type of material or subject matter, have found it
Practicalities

beneficial to band together to form what is known as a "funnel project." In a funnel project, one institution or person serves as the coordinator through which contributions from all funnel participants are submitted. This coordinator serves as the liaison between all funnel members and LC. LC interacts only with the coordinator, and not with the individual funnel participants. The MARC organization code of the particular library in the funnel responsible for the proposal is used in the 040 field of the subject authority record. Funnel projects facilitate participation by members at all levels of expertise. The funnel coordinator serves as chief expert, trainer, and reviewer of proposals for all the members. These projects may be of particular interest to smaller libraries with only one or a few catalogers. The SACO home page contains further information about funnel projects, including a helpful FAQ (http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/naco/funnelfaq.html) and descriptions and listings of the current funnel projects and participants.

SACO Mentors

In 2005, the SACO Program initiated a mentoring program. A group of experienced SACO contributors is available to provide advice and review proposals before they are submitted to LC. The list of mentors can be accessed from a link on the SACO home page (http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/SACOMentors.html). New and prospective participants are encouraged to contact a mentor in their region for help in formulating proposals. Proposals that have been reviewed and approved by a SACO mentor will receive expedited processing at LC.

Editorial Review, Feedback, and Tracking of Proposals

Once a proposal has been sent to LC, it undergoes review by a member of the Cooperative Cataloging Team. Libraries assigned a liaison from the Coop Team will have most, if not all, proposals reviewed by that liaison. If there are major problems or missing elements in a proposal, libraries should expect to receive notification of this from Coop, and the library will likely be asked to revise the proposal and resubmit it. In some instances, the Coop Team member may indicate that a particular proposal is simply not viable, because it does not adhere to current subject policies and guidelines. The Team member may be able to suggest ways in which a topic can be expressed using existing LCSH headings and subdivisions.

Following initial review in Coop, proposals are forwarded to the Cataloging Policy and Support Office, where they are assigned to a future weekly list. Once a proposed heading has been placed on a list, the contributor knows the date of the editorial meeting at which the heading will be discussed. Tentative weekly lists of proposals are posted on the SACO home page (http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/tentative/twls.html). At this stage, SACO proposals may be used on bibliographic records. A library need not hold an item it is cataloging to await the decision of the editorial meeting. Should a proposed heading be revised at the editorial meeting and approved in a different form, it is the responsibility of the contributing library to make the necessary revisions to any bibliographic records contributed to the utilities, so that the headings in those records reflect the approved form. If the
contributing library is unable to revise the record in a utility (e.g., if a record in OCLC has been used by another library and the original library that contributed it is not authorized to change the master record), it must report the change needed to that utility.

Tentative weekly lists of classification proposals are available on the SACO home page (http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/ClassTentative/twlc.html). Participants using the Classification Web proposal system who include their email address in the online proposal form will receive an email notifying them when a proposal has been assigned to a weekly list. Contributors submitting proposals via the paper proposal form will need to monitor the tentative weekly lists to see when their proposal will be considered. After the weekly editorial meetings, participants who have provided their email address through Class Web will be notified whether their proposal was approved, rejected, or approved with modifications. Contributors may also track their proposals via the weekly lists of approved new and changed classification numbers that are posted on the Cataloging and Acquisitions home page (http://www.loc.gov/aba/cataloging/classification/weeklylists/).

For classification proposals, particularly for Cutter numbers, it is usually advisable to hold an item until a number has been approved by LC. This minimizes the re-marking that might need to be done if the library assigned a class number that does not match the one established by LC. As with subject proposals, libraries should change the bibliographic record(s) they contributed to a utility if the classification number they proposed through SACO and included in the record(s) was not approved or was modified by LC.

If a heading proposed through SACO is revised by the editorial meeting, the library's SACO coordinator can expect to be notified of the change by a member of the Coop Team (this will be their Coop liaison if they have one). Coordinators will also be notified if a proposal was not approved, was marked “resubmit” on the list, or was withdrawn. Proposals that are marked "not approved" may not be resubmitted. Proposals marked “resubmit” may be revised and resubmitted once the issues raised by the editorial meeting have been addressed. Explanations for proposals that were not approved and information on proposals marked “resubmit,” with instructions for resubmitting them, are provided in the Summary of Decisions from the weekly editorial meeting that are posted to the SACOLIST and to the SACO website (http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/cpsoed/cpsoeditorial.html) shortly after the editorial meeting. The Coop Team liaison will also be able to provide specific information about how the SACO participant can revise a proposal for resubmission. The following are examples from various summaries of decisions of proposals marked “not approved” or “resubmit.”

Not Approved:

_Armenian antiquities_

This proposal and its proposed general see-also reference to create the subdivision --Antiquities, Armenian was not approved. This concept is covered by the existing free-floating formulations Armenians--[place]--Antiquities and Armenia--Antiquities.
Practicalities

Education and globalization

The proposed UF reference Internationalization of education does not appear to be a synonym for the heading. The proposal was not approved.

Gay and lesbian fiction; Gay and lesbian literature

Works about literature dealing with gay/lesbian themes, characters, etc., are entered under subject headings such as Homosexuality in literature; Gays in literature; etc. Additional subject headings are assigned to show the language, nationality, or literary form, such as American fiction--History and criticism; German literature--20th century--History and criticism. Collections of such literary works are entered under [topic]--Fiction; [topic]--Literary collections; etc., with additional subject headings for the nationality, literary form, etc. Literary works written by gays or lesbians are entered under Gays' writings or Lesbians' writings with appropriate national or language qualifier. Works that discuss multiple relationships between literature and homosexuality and entered under Homosexuality and literature. The concepts expressed in the proposed headings are therefore already provided for in LCSH, and the proposals are not approved.

Traffic fatalities--Causes

The information submitted concerning the work being cataloged implies that the causes being discussed, such as excessive speed, are the causes of the traffic accidents not the causes of death. The heading Traffic accidents is used for such works. The proposal was not approved.

Verbal ability tests

According to Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings, instruction sheet H 2186, sec. 3.c., the subdivision --Testing is used under phrase headings for types of ability for both tests and testing related to these abilities. The free-floating combination Verbal ability--Testing would be used for tests of verbal ability. The proposed heading was not approved.

Resubmit:

Fishes--Effect of water currents on

Subdivisions of the type --Effect of [concept or phenomenon] on are derivative. The terminology used in the subdivision should reflect the terminology used for the concept or phenomenon in its basic heading. That means that a heading for the concept or phenomenon needs to be present in LCSH in order for a subdivision to be proposed. A general see also reference to the free-floating subdivision should be added to the subject authority record for the basic heading. In addition, UF references of the type "Effect of [topic] on [...]" should not be made in the record for the pattern heading/free-floating subdivision combination. This proposal may
be resubmitted along with a proposal to establish a heading for the phenomenon of water currents.

**Legislative buildings**

There are many individual parliamentary, capital, and legislative office buildings established in LCSH. If this newly proposed heading were to be approved, the BTs for these individual buildings would need to be updated. This proposal may be resubmitted together with proposals to update the BTs for these individual buildings.

**Maure (African people)**

Further investigation is required to determine whether this heading conflicts with the existing heading **Hassaniyeh (Arab people)** and if so to determine the appropriate form for the heading and references. The proposal may be resubmitted.

**Shots (Cocktails)**

No authority research was cited to support the form of this heading. Since the usual meaning of the term **shots** in relation to alcoholic beverages indicates a measurement of liquor, not a type of cocktail, documentation is needed to support a proposal for another meaning. The proposal may be resubmitted if such support is found and supplied with the proposal.

**Teen films**

Further investigation is required to determine the relationship between this proposed heading and the existing heading **Young adult films**. If they are found to be separate concepts, scope notes would be needed to distinguish between them. If it is determined that both represent the same concept, a decision will need to be made as to which is the better terminology for the heading, and the references will need to be revised. The proposal may be resubmitted.

Proposals are marked “withdrawn” when something further needs to be done at LC before the proposal can proceed as is, or in a revised form. “Withdrawn” generally means that CPSO staff wish to resolve problems with related headings, include the proposal in a related project, etc. CPSO staff take responsibility for revising and/or resubmitting “withdrawn” proposals. Withdrawn proposals are generally not explained in the *Summary of Decisions*. The Coop Team liaison will be able to provide the explanation announced at the editorial meeting. The following is an example of a withdrawn proposal that was explained in the *Summary of Decisions*:

**Steamboat lines CANCEL Steamship lines**

These proposals to cancel the headings **Steamboat lines** and **Steamboat lines--Flags, insignia, etc.** and replace them with "Steamship lines" and "Steamship lines--Flags, insignia, etc." were withdrawn from the list. The proposals are
Practicalities

incomplete because there are other subdivisions established under Steamboat lines as well as BT/NT references that would also need to be revised to effect these changes. However, the meeting feels that changes to headings in this area should not be undertaken until a thorough review of the existing heading Steamboats, which has a UF Steamships, and related headings is carried out at LC.

If not contacted by a member of the Coop Team within a week of an editorial meeting, a library should assume that all of its headings on that week's list have been approved. This can be confirmed when the approved weekly list for that week is posted on LC’s Cataloging and Acquisitions home page (http://www.loc.gov/aba/cataloging/subject/weeklylists/), which can take as long as two weeks after the editorial meeting.

Subsequent to each editorial meeting, revisions to a heading and/or its references are made in the LCSH Master Database and the subject authority records for that weekly list are then distributed by the Cataloging Distribution Service to utilities and other subscribers. New and revised headings also then appear online in the Library of Congress Authorities Web site and on Classification Web. Generally, subject authority records can be retrieved in the utilities six weeks after a SACO proposal was submitted. If after submitting a proposal a library does not receive notification of a problem and the proposal does not appear on a tentative weekly list within four weeks, it is advisable to contact the Cooperative Cataloging Team to inquire about the status of the proposal.

Statistics

Libraries can decide to maintain local statistics for SACO proposals in a variety of ways. For example, in the Monographic Services Division at the University of Washington, each cataloger maintains a monthly sheet of statistics, which includes a box to record SACO proposals that he or she has made. The Program for Cooperative Cataloging maintains its own statistics on SACO proposals that have been approved. New subject headings, changed subject headings, new classification numbers, and changed classification numbers are all counted separately. Monthly and annual (October through September) statistics are available on the PCC home page (http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/stats/stats.html). Statistics are compiled for both individual contributing libraries as well as for funnel projects. Libraries will need to decide if they wish to rely on the PCC statistics or if they need to maintain other statistics locally.
Subject Headings
When to Make a SACO Proposal

Library of Congress practice is to assign to the work being cataloged one or more subject headings that best summarize the overall contents of the work and provide access to its most important topics (SCM H 180). LC only assigns headings for topics that comprise at least 20% of a work, although other libraries may choose to diverge from this policy for local reasons.

Headings should be assigned that are as specific as the topics covered in a work. If a needed heading is not yet established in the subject authority file, nor able to be constructed using established headings and free-floating subdivisions, then a new subject heading should be formulated and proposed via SACO.

In some cases, the form of a new heading will be readily apparent, because an already established pattern exists in LCSH. Citing the work being cataloged and the pattern may be sufficient in such situations. However, in most cases the cataloger must do additional authority research to corroborate or verify a heading for a concept in authoritative reference sources (see Authority Research for Subjects, p. 16). In some instances, the cataloger will find that the term or phrase used in the work being cataloged is not the one in predominant use in other sources. The predominant or most authoritative form should be preferred as the established form of a new subject heading. Variants from the predominant form can be recorded as cross-references.

SCM H 180 sec. 4 describes the cases when catalogers should assign headings that are broader or more general than the topic that it is intended to cover: when it is not possible to establish a precise heading, when an array of headings is needed to express the topic, or when the assignment of a more general heading is called for by special instructions in the SCM.

SCM H 187 instructs catalogers to establish a subject heading for a topic that represents a discrete, identifiable concept when it is first encountered in a work being cataloged, rather than after several works on the topic have been published and cataloged. Additional research often shows that there already were other works published about that topic that could have been assigned the new subject. Some libraries, including the Library of Congress, identify the items in their collection that should have been assigned the new heading and, once the heading has been approved, add it to the appropriate bibliographic records in their catalogs.

When a work being cataloged is on a topic that appears to be new but is judged to be not yet discrete and identifiable, LC practice is assign the available subject headings that most accurately designate the topic(s) of the work.

For newly emerging topics and disciplines, it is not always easy to find consensus among authorities as to what term should be used for the topic. Generally, prefer current American usage for a concept. In cases where there is no consensus among American authorities, SCM H 187 instructs catalogers to make an intuitive judgment based on
available evidence (in some cases the only evidence may be the work being cataloged) and then to provide UF references from any significantly different terms that have been found for the same concept. If a different term for the concept from the one selected for the heading becomes well established at a later date, the heading can be changed to the more appropriate form through a SACO change proposal (see Subject Heading Change Proposals, p. 155).

In some cases specific guidelines exist for when to establish a new heading. For example, headings for fictitious characters are established only when the character has appeared in three or more different works or when a work of history or criticism about the character is cataloged (see SCM H 1610 and H 1790, as well as Guidelines on Subject Access to Individual Works of Fiction, Drama, Etc., 2nd ed., American Library Association, 2000).

Headings may also be established for forms, types, styles, genres, etc., of literature, music, art, motion pictures, videos, and other audiovisual materials (e.g., see SCM H 250 and H 1916.3-1917.5 for music, H 1250-1255 for art and photography, H 1775-1828 for literature, H 1945.5 for posters, H 2070 for software, and H 2230 for visual materials and non-music sound recordings).
Authority Research for Subjects

Authority research is the heart and soul of making subject heading proposals. If it has been determined that a new subject heading or subject heading-subdivision combination that is not free-floating is needed (see When to Make a SACO Proposal, p. 14), the cataloger must usually undertake authority research to determine the form of the heading that will be proposed, variant forms that will be recorded as cross-references, and appropriate broader and/or related terms.

In some cases (e.g., headings established according to a pattern) a single 670 citation for the work being cataloged may be all that is necessary. Most commonly, however, to carry out adequate authority research the cataloger must consult additional sources. It is necessary to seek corroboration or verification in other sources of the term or phrase being proposed as the heading. An individual work may or may not be accurate or authoritative or may or may not present or advocate a particular point of view. Other sources may provide information on variant forms that should be included on authority records as references. In some cases, the other sources will make it clear that the term or phrase found in the item being cataloged is not the standard accepted one.

How many and what kinds of additional sources should be consulted? Generally, citation of authoritative reference sources is preferred over citation of usage in titles to support the choice of heading. Examples of authoritative reference sources include dictionaries and glossaries, encyclopedias, thesauri and other subject heading lists, indexes, atlases, and gazetteers. Many reference sources are now available electronically and may be used instead of or in addition to their print counterparts. The SACO home page provides a list of Web-based reference resources (http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/resources.html). Usage in titles (e.g., titles found in a bibliographic utility) or information found in non-reference sources may be cited and can be a good source of variant terminology for UF references.

It is important to remember that sources consulted must be relevant to the topic being established. For general topics general dictionaries (such as Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language and Random House Webster's Unabridged Dictionary) or encyclopedias (such as Encyclopaedia Britannica, The World Book Encyclopedia, and the online Wikipedia) are appropriate. Subject dictionaries and encyclopedias covering specific disciplines should be consulted for specialized or technical terms and jargon.

There is no definitive list of preferred reference sources that must be consulted. Catalogers should exercise their judgment as to what sources are appropriate and useful. In most cases, the items in a library's reference collection and/or electronic reference resources should be adequate. Sources in a library's general collection may also be utilized as may other resources such as audiovisual materials, maps, and non-reference electronic resources.

There is no limit to the number of sources that may be cited in an authority proposal, but SACO does not require that catalogers perform exhaustive research. The goal is subject authority research that is good enough to indicate a consensus of usage in relevant sources. The quantity of authority work deemed sufficient will vary with the topic and
Authority Research for Subjects

what the consulted reference sources reveal. If the information found in the work being
cataloged is confirmed in at least one relevant, authoritative source, that is probably all
that is needed in most cases. If conflicting information is found in the first two sources
checked, further sources may need to be checked to determine if a consensus can be
found. It is sometimes necessary to weigh the information found in various sources and
to ascertain which source is more authoritative or current.

For obscure topics or topics not likely to be found in sources other than the work being
cataloged, it is still necessary to do authority research to demonstrate that the topic was
properly investigated. Relevant sources searched in which no information was found to
justify or support the heading being proposed should be cited in authority proposals in a
675 field. Examples of situations where this may be necessary are works on specific
archaeological sites, brand name products, computer languages, and newly described
animal and plant species. In such cases, it is helpful to provide succinct explanatory
information from the work cataloged in the subfield $b$ of the 670 citation for that work.
**Subject Authority Proposal Form**

**Instructions for using form; please read carefully before inputting proposal:**

1. Use the pull-down menus to select the appropriate MARC 21 tag for each field.
2. Do not explicitly code for an initial subfield in any field (i.e., $a, $w, $z).
3. Use the dollar sign ($) to note a delimiter before the subfield code (e.g., $x, $y).
4. If proposed heading is 100, 110, 111, or 130, supply the appropriate indicator; 150-151 do not require indicator; apply this instruction to 4xx and 5xx also.
5. 1XX, 4XX, or 5XX headings with subdivisions require keying the subfields by using a delimiter ($) and the appropriate MARC subfield code.
6. Add diacritics following the affected letter (e.g., Me(acute)xico) as appropriate. Please save time by copying and pasting from the list of diacritics. Using this list helps prevent typos and provides a uniform name for the diacritic.
7. When citing geographic coordinates spell out the coordinates (e.g., 47 deg. 25 min. 34 sec N)
8. For additional help go to the Guidelines for formulating LCSH proposals.

* Asterisk (*) indicates required field.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Today's date:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>006:06</td>
<td>Direct or indirect geographic subdivision. No decision. Select decision from pull down tab (cf. SOM H364, sec. 3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>040:</strong></td>
<td><em>(Input institutional MARC 21 code, not utility code)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>055:</strong></td>
<td>Input classification number, if appropriate (cf. SOM H365)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>150</strong></td>
<td><em>(Select 1XX from pull-down tab. Diacritics list)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>245</strong></td>
<td><em>(Select 450 from pull-down tab.)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>245</strong></td>
<td><em>(Select 450 from pull-down tab.)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>245</strong></td>
<td><em>(Select 450 from pull-down tab.)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>245</strong></td>
<td><em>(Select 450 from pull-down tab.)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>245</strong></td>
<td><em>(Select 450 from pull-down tab.)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>245</strong></td>
<td><em>(Broader Term (BT) select 5XX from pull-down tab. Do not input subfields $w or $z; Subfield information is supplied on selection of this field)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>245</strong></td>
<td><em>(Broader Term (BT) select 5XX from pull-down tab. Do not input subfields $w or $z)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>245</strong></td>
<td><em>(Related Term (RT) select 5XX from pull-down tab. Subfield information is supplied based on selection of this field. Note: RTs require an accompanying change proposal or an accompanying new reciprocal heading; please note this in comments field below)</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Guidelines for Formulating LC Subject Heading Proposals

These instructions are to be used when filling in the Subject Authority Proposal Form found on the SACO home page. In addition to these guidelines, consult the appropriate fields discussed in the MARC Authority Format for Subjects section of this manual.

008/06: Geographic subdivision:

_____ May Subd Geog
_____ Not Subd Geog
_____ No Decision

Most headings should be authorized to be divided geographically unless they are inherently geographic in nature and MARC-tagged as a 151 or they represent abstract concepts with no geographic orientation. If the new heading should be divided geographically, place an X on the May Subd Geog line. If unable to determine the appropriate choice, leave this field blank. For further guidance please refer to LC Subject Cataloging Manual (SCM) instruction sheets H 194 and H 364.

040: Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: ________________

Please enter the institution's MARC 21 organization code (formerly NUC symbol/USMARC code). Do not use the institution's OCLC code.

053: Library of Congress Classification Number

Many headings do not require a 053. For guidance on when to add the 053 field and whether the number needs a qualifier, refer to SCM H 365.

HEADING 1XX: ________________________________________________________

Indicate the proposed heading in this area. A subject heading proposed for inclusion in LCSH must be supported by adequate, appropriate authority research demonstrating a clear preference for the proposed form. Cite reference sources in which supporting information was found in separate 670s. When in doubt, contact the Cooperative Cataloging Team.
4XX: Cross-References (or Used For References (UF))

For guidance on how references should be constructed, refer to SCM H 195 and H 373. Cite sources in 670 fields for each additional UF reference not already justified.

5XX: Broader Term (BT) & Related Term (RT) References

For guidance on how to determine an appropriate BT and on how to determine if headings qualify to be related term references, refer to SCM H 370.

670: Source Citations

Provide the title of the item being cataloged (work cat.) which prompted the need for the subject heading as the first 670. Should the heading itself not be found in the title, indicate where in the item the term, concept, name, etc. was found and if possible a sentence or two from the item describing or explaining the heading in question. Cf. SCM H 200, H 202, and H 203. "It is seldom acceptable to cite only the work cataloged as authority for a new concept, except in the case of certain named entities such as obscure archaeological sites, brand name products, computer languages, etc. Although the concept may have been found only in the work being cataloged, other sources appropriate to the subject area in question should be cited to demonstrate that the concept was properly investigated"--SCM H 202.

675: Sources not found

Cite the titles of sources that were consulted but in which no information about the heading or its references was found.

680: Scope Notes

Include in this area the text of a note to define or limit the use of a particular heading. For guidance on drafting a scope note, refer to SCM H 400.

781: Geographic subdivision

If the 1XX is a 151, supply a 781 field according to SCM H 836. Note that when the 781 field is not appropriate for a heading coded 151 (e.g., when the heading is a celestial body or a geographic entity in a city; cf. SCM H 836) supply a 667 field with this note: This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.

952: Bib records to change

Optional field. The Cooperative Cataloging Team will complete.
952: LC pattern or SCM instruction sheet

Supply the number of the SCM instruction sheet on which the 1XX was based (e.g., if 1XX is for a fictitious character, cite SCM H 1610). When using patterns, supply only those called for by SCM H 202.
Examples of Decisions Involved in Making New Subject Proposals

The examples in this section illustrate some of the analytical processes, decision making, and research that a cataloger would do in order to decide that a new subject heading (and classification number in some cases) is needed, what the form of the heading should be, and what other proposals may be necessary as a result of the first proposal.

The following proposals are grouped together by type of heading in order to help users of this manual identify examples relevant to a particular situation.

Examples A-D: Headings supplying more appropriate level of specificity
- Log-periodic antennas; Systems librarians; Cataloging of cartographic materials; Chinese mitten crab

Examples E-J: Headings for genres and forms
- Medical drama; Romantic comedy films; Reggaetón; Khim music; Banjo and double bass music; Cootie catchers

Examples K-L: Headings based on an existing pattern
- This (The English word)
- Historical fiction, Chilean

Examples M-S: Headings for geographic places
- Madhupur Jungle (Bangladesh); Aleknagik, Lake (Alaska); Auyuittuq National Park (Nunavut); Fort Worden State Park (Port Townsend, Wash.); Chiles Volcano (Colombia and Ecuador); Lusatian Mountains; Spring Lake (Hays County, Tex.); Bluewater Lake (Minn.); Cavanaugh, Lake (Wash. : Lake); Diamond Lake (Pend Oreille County, Wash. : Lake); Rock River (Yukon)

Examples T-V: Headings for named buildings, building details, and structures
- Carnegie Mansion (New York, N.Y.); Old Senate Chamber (United States Capitol, Washington, D.C.); Fountain Square (Cincinnati, Ohio)

Examples W-X: Headings with non-geographic qualifiers
- Pictorialism (Photography movement); Kane, Alex (Fictitious character)

Example Y: Headings also appropriate for use as a free-floating subdivision
- Weblogs

Examples Z-AA: Headings with non-free-floating subdivisions
- Cookery, Canadian—British Columbia style
- Wetlands--Interpretive programs
Example BB: Establishing a free-floating subdivision under a pattern heading

Fishes—Predators of
Example A

Title of work being cataloged: *High gain log-periodic antennas*.

Existing LCSH, *Antennas (Electronics)*, is not at the appropriate level of specificity. A proposal for the more specific concept of log-periodic antennas is needed.

Research in authoritative reference sources shows that the term used is the same as the one in the title of the work cataloged.

SACO proposal: **Log-periodic antennas**

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings for types of objects and equipment.

008/06 May Subd Geog

150 $a Log-periodic antennas
550 $w g $a Antennas (Electronics)
670 $a McGraw-Hill dict. sci. tech. $b (log-periodic antenna: a broad-band antenna which consists of a sheet of metal with two wedge-shaped cutouts, each with teeth cut into its radii along circular arcs; characteristics are repeated at a number of frequencies that are equally spaced on a logarithmic scale)
670 $a The new IEEE standard dict. of electrical and electronics terms, 1993 $b (log-periodic antenna. Any one of a class of antennas having a structural geometry such that its impedance and radiation characteristics repeat periodically as the logarithm of frequency. Any one of a class of antennas having a structural geometry such that its electrical characteristics repeat periodically as the logarithm of frequency.)
Title of work being cataloged: *Educational background of systems librarians*.

Existing LCSH, **Librarians**, is too broad for this work. A heading is needed for the specific concept of systems librarians.

Authority research shows that the predominant form in use is systems librarians. Other forms found include: automated systems librarians; systems managers; network systems librarian.

**SACO proposal: Systems librarians**

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings that represent topics that have a geographic orientation, or that could be discussed in relation to a place or to a population in a particular location.

A scope note is included in the proposal to provide clarification as to when the heading should be used (see p. 145 for further information on scope notes and MARC field 680).

A classification proposal is also needed for this work (see classification proposal example A) if the library cataloging it classifies it as a separate monograph using LCC. In this case, a classification number is already established for types of librarians, but a Cutter number for systems librarians is needed. In a case like this, include the proposed classification number in the 053 field and submit the subject heading proposal together with the classification proposal.

008/06 May Subd Geog

053 0 $a Z682.4.S94
150 $a Systems librarians
450 $a Automated systems librarians
450 $a Library systems managers
450 $a Network systems librarians
450 $a Systems managers, Library
550 $w g $a Librarians
670 $a LC database, May 14, 1999 $b (systems librarians; systems managers)
670 $a AltaVista search, May 14, 1999 $b (systems librarian; network systems librarian)
680 $i Here are entered works on librarians who specialize in planning, developing, maintaining, and supporting automated systems and services in libraries.
952 $a Classification proposal faxed to Coop May 14, 1999
Example C

Title of work being cataloged: *Maps and related cartographic materials : cataloging, classification, and bibliographic control.*

Existing LCSH, *Cataloging of maps*, is too narrow for the content of this work. The book covers all types of cartographic materials, not just maps. On the other hand, the existing heading *Cataloging of nonbook materials* is too broad for this work.

Examination of LCSH shows that the form used to express the concept of cataloging a specific type of material is *Cataloging of <type of material>*. The cataloger must now determine what term should be used for the concept of cartographic materials. Authority research shows that the appropriate term to use is "cartographic materials."

SACO proposal: *Cataloging of cartographic materials*

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings that represent topics that have a geographic orientation, or that could be discussed in relation to a place or to a population in a particular location, including disciplines and fields of study, and processes, activities, and phenomena.

Because the concept "cartographic materials" is not established in LCSH, and because it is needed as the broader term on the proposed heading, an additional SACO proposal must be made: *Cartographic materials*. SACO change proposals must also be made to add *Cartographic materials* as the broader term on the existing headings for specific types of cartographic materials (*Globes; Maps; Remote-sensing images*). These changes can be seen on the second sample page of Tentative Weekly List 11 (March 22, 2000) reproduced in this manual (p. 86).

If the SACO library uses LCC, a classification number must also be assigned to the work cataloged. Research shows that there is an existing number, Z695.6, with the caption *Maps. Atlases*. The cataloger decides to expand the caption so that this number can also be used for cataloging of cartographic materials. A classification proposal is submitted to change the caption under Z695.6 to *Maps. Atlases. Cartographic materials* and the existing number is included in the 053 of the subject proposal for *Cataloging of cartographic materials*. Since a classification number for *Cartographic materials* is not needed for the work being cataloged, no classification proposal is made at this time for that concept and the authority proposal for it contains no 053.

008/06 May Subd Geog

053 0 $a Z695.6
150 $a Cataloging of cartographic materials
550 $w g $a Cartographic materials
670 $a Work cat.: Maps and related cartographic materials, c1999: $b p. xiii
New Subject Proposal Examples

(cataloging of cartographic materials) p. xv (digital geospatial data, remote-sensing images, geologic sections, maps, globes, atlases)

952 $a LC pattern: Cataloging of maps; Cataloging of nonbook materials

008/06 May Subd Geog

150 $a Cartographic materials
550 $w g $a Nonbook materials
670 $a Work cat.: Maps and related cartographic materials, c1999: $b p. xv (digital geospatial data, remote-sensing images, geologic sections, maps, globes, atlases, map series)
670 $a Anglo-American cataloguing rules, c1998: $b p. 616 (Cartographic material. Any material representing the whole or part of the earth or any celestial body at any scale. Cartographic materials include two- and three-dimensional maps and plans (including maps of imaginary places); aeronautical, navigational, and celestial charts; atlases; globes; block diagrams; sections; aerial photographs with a cartographic purpose; bird's-eye views (map views), etc.)
Example D

Title of work being cataloged: *The Chinese mitten crab (Eriocheir sinensis), previous invasions and policy decisions: implications for improving Washington State aquatic nuisance species management.*

There is no existing heading in LCSH for this species. The heading **Crabs** is far too broad. A heading is needed for this specific animal.

Authority research shows that there is a standard common name for the crab species *Eriocheir sinensis*: Chinese mitten crab. No other variant forms of name are found. SCM H 1332 instructs catalogers to prefer the common name of animals and plants if it is in popular use and unambiguous. Furthermore, it says to prefer the common name for animals and plants of economic importance, such as pests or cultivated plants. The crab in question is an introduced pest.

SACO proposal: **Chinese mitten crab**

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings for living, extinct, or fossil organisms.

SCM H 1332 instructs catalogers to add a BT reference from the next broader level in the taxonomic hierarchy. The next level up from species is genus, which in this case is *Eriocheir*. Since *Eriocheir* has not yet been established in LCSH, a separate proposal is also needed for it. Authority research must be done to verify that *Eriocheir* is a valid name, to determine if a standard common name exists for this genus, and to ascertain the name of the next broader level of taxonomic hierarchy, which is found to be the family Grapsidae. Since *Grapsidae* is already established in LCSH, the process stops here and no additional proposals are necessary.

Although the work being cataloged is a thesis and the library does not assign LC classification to theses, the appropriate classification number from LCC may be included in the proposals. If an 053 is not included by the SACO library, it will be added by staff at LC.

008/06 May Subd Geog

053 0 $a QL444.M33 Sc Zoology
150 $a Chinese mitten crab
450 $a Eriocheir sinensis
450 $a Mitten crab, Chinese
550 $w g $a Eriocheir
670 $a Common and sci. names of aquatic inverts. from the U.S. and Canada.
New Subject Proposal Examples

Decapod crustaceans, 1989: $b$ p. 44 (Eriocheir sinensis, Chinese mitten crab)
670 $a$ Integrated Taxonomic Information System, via WWW, July 14, 2000 $b$
(Eriocheir sinensis. Common name: Chinese mitten crab. Rank: species. Usage:
valid)
670 $a$ Index to organism names, via WWW, July 17, 2000 $b$ (Eriocheir sinensis.
Group: Crustacea. Classification: Brachyura)
670 $a$ LC database, July 17, 2000 $b$ (ti: The Chinese mitten crab; subj. hdg:.
Eriocheir sinensis)
675 $a$ Web. 3

008/06 May Subd Geog

053 0 $a$ QL444.M33 Sc Zoology
150 $a$ Eriocheir
550 $w$ g $a$ Grapsidae
670 $a$ Work cat.: Draheim, R.C. The Chinese mitten crab (Eriocheir sinensis) ...
1999.
670 $a$ Integrated Taxonomic Information System, via WWW, July 17, 2000 $b$
(Eriocheir. Vernacular name: not available. Rank: Genus. Usage: valid. Family:
Grapsidae)
670 $a$ Index to organism names, via WWW, July 17, 2000 $b$ (Eriocheir. Group:
Crustacea. Classification: Brachyura)
675 $a$ Web. 3
New Subject Proposal Examples

Headings for genres and forms

Example E

Title of work being cataloged: Patient A.

Patient A, a play by Lee Blessing, tells the story of Kimberly Bergalis, who was infected with HIV during a dental procedure and died from AIDS in 1991. Many libraries assign form/genre headings for literary works, following the Guidelines on Subject Access to Individual Works of Fiction, Drama, Etc. (GSAFD) and/or the literature instructions in the SCM. At the time of this proposal, the cataloger found one useful existing genre heading in LCSH to assign to this play (Biographical drama), but no genre heading was available that covered the medical themes explored in the work.

The cataloger identifies several other plays in the library’s collection that deal with doctors, patients, diseases, etc. Additional research shows that several thesauri include genre terms for fiction and moving image materials on medical themes. In addition, a search of the LC online catalog reveals usage there of the term “medical drama.” Armed with this information the library decides to propose a new genre heading in LCSH.

SACO proposal: Medical drama

The proposed heading is coded “Not Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say headings for general literary forms and genres are not subdivided geographically.

Since the free-floating form subdivision --Drama can be used under topics, the cataloger includes several references for equivalent genre headings constructed in that form so that users searching under some common medical headings subdivided by --Drama are referred to the phrase heading.

008/06 Not Subd Geog

150 $a Medical drama
450 $a Diseases $v Drama
450 $a Doctor drama
450 $a Health facilities $v Drama
450 $a Hospital drama
450 $a Hospitals $v Drama
450 $a Medical personnel $v Drama
450 $a Patients $v Drama
450 $a Physicians $v Drama
450 $a Sick $v Drama
550 $w g $a Drama
New Subject Proposal Examples

670  $a GSAFD, 2000 $b (Medical drama (Films); Medical drama (Television programs; Medical novels)

670  $a The moving image genre-form guide, via WWW, Nov. 12, 2002 $b (Medical. Fictional work telling of the milieu of health practitioners, from doctors to nurses, their profession, and their patients … The milieu may be portrayed under both emergency as well as day-to-day conditions, with patients struggling to overcome physical and sometimes mental challenges.)

670  $a LC database, Nov. 12, 2002 $b (medical drama)
Example F

Title of work being cataloged: *Romantic comedy in Hollywood from Lubitsch to Sturges*.

A work may be an instance of a form or genre, or it may be about that form or genre. LC subject headings may be established for either kind. In this example, we have a work about romantic comedy films, rather than an actual romantic comedy film itself. The existing heading possibilities in LCSH are *Comedy films* or *Screwball comedy films*. *Comedy films* is too broad. *Screwball comedy films* may be an appropriate heading, but further research is needed.

The phrase “romantic comedy” is a well known term used to describe films, and research in film reference sources authenticates this perception. While some sources equate romantic comedy and screwball comedy, others make a clear distinction between them, so the cataloger decides a new genre heading is appropriate to propose.

SACO proposal: **Romantic comedy films**

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings that represent topics that have a geographic orientation, or that could be discussed in relation to a place or to a population in a particular location.

008/06 May Subd Geog

150 $a Romantic comedy films
450 $a Hollywood romantic comedy films
450 $a Romantic comedies (Motion pictures)
550 $w g $a Comedy films
670 $a Lopez, D. Films by genre, 1993 $b (Romantic comedy. This is a blanket term that includes any comic film in which the protagonists, a man and a woman, engage in courtship, amorous dalliance and sexual games meant to seduce and entrap the member of the opposite sex; romantic comedies; the following types of comedy also qualify as romantic comedy: Marriage comedy, Screwball comedy, Sophisticated comedy)
670 $a Konigsberg, I. The complete film dictionary, 1997 $b (Romantic comedy. A film dealing with the relationship of a man and woman, who, after many trials and tribulations … are finally united at the end of the film; a variation is the couple who start off united, are temporarily separated, but are reunited at the end of the film; trials and tribulations are treated in a comic manner. Romantic comedy has sometimes been thought of as synonymous with screwball comedy, but the second classification refers to a group of films too specific to be so all-inclusive. A number of romantic comedies have heroines less aggressive or actions less madcap so that they are distinguishable from the screwball variety.)
New Subject Proposal Examples

670  $a Sennett, T. Lunatics and lovers : a tribute to the giddy and glittering era of the screen’s “screwball” and romantic comedies, 1985.
670  $a LC database, Jan. 29, 2004 $b (the Hollywood romantic comedy)
Example G


The item being cataloged is a sound recording of a genre of music called reggaeton. Reggaeton developed in Puerto Rico out of reggae and hip hop music. A cataloger could assign the existing headings *Reggae music* and *Rap (Music)* (the authorized heading for hip hop music) to this recording, but those headings are not at the appropriate level of specificity. Authority records for styles and genres of music are required per SCM H 250. Research shows that there is warrant for establishing a heading for reggaeton. This example also illustrates the usefulness of Internet resources for terminology that may be too new to have made it into standard reference sources. The sources found online confirm the genre’s name as found on the recording, but also provide a variant form as well as the information needed to select the broader terms on the authority record.

SACO proposal: *Reggaetón*

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings that represent topics that have a geographic orientation, or that could be discussed in relation to a place or to a population in a particular location. Reference sources indicate that reggaeton is popular in a variety of countries.

008/06 May Subd Geog

150   $a Reggaet(acute)on  
450   $a Reguet(acute)on  
550   $w g $a Rap (Music) $z Puerto Rico  
550   $w g $a Reggae music $z Puerto Rico  
670   $a Wikipedia, June 2, 2005 $b (Reggaeton is a type of dance music that was developed in Puerto Rico; now also very popular in other Latin American countries; Reggaeton - also spelled Reggaet(acute)on and hispanicised as Reguet(acuteo)n - is a Spanish language genre of dancehall with a distinct hip hop influence that has been heard in Puerto Rico since the mid 1990's)  
670   $a Music of Puerto Rico WWW site, June 2, 2005 $b (name derived from the reggae music of Jamaica which influenced reggaeton's dance beat; also heavily influenced by other Puerto Rican music genres and by urban hip-hop music craze in the United States)

Since all 5XXs on authority records must also have their own authority records, both of the broader terms on this proposal must be established headings. Hip hop music is a variant form on the authority record for *Rap (Music)*. While both *Rap (Music)* and *Reggae music* were already established, the headings subdivided geographically by Puerto Rico were not. A 5XX reference consisting of an established main heading with a free-floating or geographic subdivision is called a “backdoor heading.” SACO does not
require libraries to submit proposals for backdoor headings. If a backdoor heading is not already set up in LCSH, the library may submit a proposal to establish it, but if it does not, that authority record will be created by staff at LC. Authority records for backdoor headings generally consist solely of the 1XX field, without references or source citations. If a library chooses to submit a backdoor heading proposal via SACO, a 952 note can be added to explain the reason for the proposal, e.g.:

150 $a Reggae music $z Puerto Rico
952 $a Made for reference hierarchy

The 008/06 in the backdoor heading would be coded “No Decision” per instructions in SCM H 364 section 3.
Example H

Title of work being cataloged: Rīan rūčak khim dūai tonʿēng.

This publication provides instruction on how to play the khim, a Thai dulcimer, with music in Thai style notation. The cataloger needs a subject heading to bring out the instructional aspect of the work and a heading for the form of music. Authority records are required for headings for music of a single instrument (SCM H 250). In order to establish a form heading for this type of instrumental music, a heading for the type of instrument must first be established. The cataloger must do research to determine what the authorized term for the instrument will be. SCM H 1918 instructs catalogers that when establishing a heading for an instrument they must also establish a heading for music of the instrument, which authorizes the instrument to be used in bibliographic records as a medium of performance.

SACO proposals: Khim and Khim music

Musical instruments are generally established in the singular form per SCM H 285 and H 1918.

The proposed instrument heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings for types of objects and equipment.

008/06 May Subd Geog

150 $a Khim
450 $a Kim (Dulcimer)
550 $w g $a Dulcimer
550 $w g $a Musical instruments $z Cambodia
550 $w g $a Musical instruments $z Thailand
670 $a Work cat.: Niphan Thanarak. R(macron)ian r(macron)u(hacek)chak khim d(macron)uai ton(ayn)(macron)eng, 1997: $b pp. 8-10 (khim; a wooden hammered dulcimer with 42 metal strings and two bridges; has fourteen courses of three strings)
670 $a Dolmetsch online music dictionary, Aug. 2, 2006 $b (Khim, see kim; Kim (Southern Thailand) a hammered dulcimer with three strings per course similar to the Chinese yang chin. Both have Arabic origins; Kim (Vietnam), see nguye(umlaut)at; Nguye(umlaut)at (Vietnam) also called the k(grave)im, a guitar-like instrument with a long neck, which emits muted sounds, having 2 strings made of silk braid).
670 $a Wikipedia, Aug. 2, 2006 $b (The khim (pronounced "kim," with a rising tone, in Thai) is a hammered dulcimer from Thailand and Cambodia. It is made of wood and trapezoidal in shape, with numerous brass strings. It is played with two flexible bamboo sticks and is used as both a solo and ensemble instrument. The instrument was introduced to Thailand and Cambodia from China, where a similar
New Subject Proposal Examples

(though usually larger) instrument is called yangqin; the khim produces a significantly softer sound. Traditional khim have two bridges, though in the late 20th century some players began using larger instruments with more bridges.)

670 $a Grove music online, Aug. 2, 2006 $b (under Dulcimer nomenclature: The Mandarin Chinese term Yangqin ("foreign string instrument") is the commonest one in the orient, and it has also been borrowed in Indian Sanskrit. The term used in Mongolia is yoochin; in Korea yangg(breve)um; among the Central Asian Uighurs yenjing; in Thailand khim. Like European dulcimers, these usually have long bridges (chessmen only occasionally), vertical tuning-pins and an acute angle of about 60 degrees.)

The reference from the variant spelling is qualified because kim is also a guitar-like instrument in Vietnam and because the same term is found as a cross-reference to the heading Nori, the name for various species of edible seaweed in genus Porphyra.

SCM H 1918 requires that catalogers include in the heading for the music of the instrument a see also note (MARC field 360), where the authorized plural, if there is one, is shown, and a scope note (MARC field 680). The wording patterns for both of those notes are provided in the instruction sheet and illustrated in the proposal below. Please note that the Web proposal form does not have a specific box for see also notes. If a see also note is required, it should be keyed into the box for comments and a member of the Cooperative Cataloging Team will move the information into the proper MARC field.

The proposed music genre heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings that could be discussed in relation to a place or to a population in a particular location.

008/06 May Subd Geog

150 $a Khim music
360 $i headings for forms and types of music that include “khim” or “khims” and headings with medium of performance that include “khim” or “khims”
680 $i Here are entered compositions not in a specific form or of a specific type for solo khim, and compositions in several forms or types for solo khim.

Based on the SACO proposals shown above, the subject headings that were assigned for the work being cataloged included the following:

Khim $v Methods $v Self-instruction
Khim music
Example I

Title of work being cataloged: *Music for two*.

This recording features Bela Fleck on banjo and Edgar Meyer on double bass. Headings for music for combinations of two instruments must be established per SCM H 250. Instructions on which order to put the two instruments in the heading are found in SCM H 1917.5. Both instruction sheets are cited instead of a pattern in local note field 952. This kind of heading is an example of one of the few times when additional authority research is not needed or required to justify the heading and its references, provided that headings for both instruments themselves are already established. In the 670 citation the specific instruments do not even have to be named.

SACO proposal: **Banjo and double bass music**

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings that could be discussed in relation to a place or to a population in a particular location.

008/06 May Subd Geog

150 $a Banjo and double bass music
450 $a Double bass and banjo music
952 $a SCM H 250 1-b; H 1917.5 sec. 2
Example J

Title of work being cataloged: *Cootie catcher : your own personal fortune teller*.

The bibliographic description of this work includes a note that explains what this item actually is: Consists of a single sheet folded and refolded again so that the four exterior flaps, bearing text, may be opened at random to reveal one's fortune in the format called a cootie catcher. Package includes instructions for using the cootie catcher and directions for making your own cootie catcher.

In this case, the work is not about any subject. The existing heading *Fortune-telling* would be assigned to works about that topic. The heading *Fortune-tellers* is for the persons who tell fortunes. What is needed instead is a form heading to describe what this item is. The term “cootie catcher” may be the appropriate name for this, but additional research is needed to verify this or to find a more appropriate term. Authority research shows that these things are sometimes called “fortune tellers,” but the term in common usage is indeed “cootie catcher.” “Fortune tellers” can be given as a reference, but it needs to be qualified to distinguish it from the persons covered in the other heading. This proposal illustrates the usefulness of searching the Internet when standard reference sources do not provide any information.

**SACO proposal: Cootie catchers**

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings for types of objects and equipment.

008/06 May Subd Geog

150 $a Cootie catchers
450 $a Catchers, Cootie
450 $a Fortune tellers (Paper work)
450 $a Origami cootie catchers
550 $w g $a Paper work
670 $a Google search, July 16, 2003 $b (cootie catcher; origami cootie catcher)
670 $a eCrush website, July 16, 2003: $b fortunes/cootie catcher (an origami-style device constructed of a single sheet of paper and used on playgrounds the world over to tell a fortune)
670 $a LC database, July 16, 2003 $b (ti: The cootie catcher book; subtitle on cover: Tear-'em-out, fold-'em-up, fortune tellers; keywords: Cootie catchers, Fortune tellers)
675 $a OED; $a Britannica online; $a Amer. Heritage dict. of the Engl. lang., c2000; $a Web. 3
When this heading was approved, the library assigned two headings on the record for the item, both of which indicate that it was an example of the form rather than about it:

650 _0  $a Cootie catchers $v Specimens.
655 _0  $a Cootie catchers.
Headings based on an existing pattern

Example K

Title of work being cataloged: *The demonstrative "this" as an indefinite article in spoken English.*

Many academic libraries catalog their institution’s theses and dissertations, which are often on arcane topics or newly emerging disciplines. Libraries also sometimes purchase reproductions of other institutions’ dissertations. The principle of specificity applies as well to these unpublished materials as it does to more mainstream library materials. The thesis in this example is in the discipline of linguistics and focuses on the word “this.” While LCSH terms exist to bring out the concepts of English-language articles (*English language--Article*) and the concept of spoken English (*English language--Spoken English*), the principal concept needed is for the word “this.” The cataloger finds that LCSH does have headings for specific words in various languages, for example: *Also (The English word); Pourquoi (The French word); Ne (The Russian word).* Thus a clear pattern exists on which to base a proposal for a heading for the word “this.”

This type of proposal illustrates one of the few cases where additional authority research is usually not necessary to justify the heading. It is sufficient here just to cite an existing heading as the pattern on which the new proposal is based. The pattern also makes clear what the appropriate broader term(s) should be if the particular heading selected as a pattern is coded in fixed field 008/29 as having evaluated references (see p. 97).

SACO proposal: *This (The English word)*

Per the instructions in SCM H 364 section 3, the 008/06 in the proposed heading is coded “No Decision” because the heading does not fall into any of the types of headings covered in sections 1 (headings authorized for geographic subdivision) or 2 (headings not authorized for geographic subdivision).

008/06 No Decision

150 $a This (The English word)
550 $w g $a English language $x Etymology
670 $a Work cat.: Wright, S. The demonstrative "this" as an indefinite article in spoken English, 1989.
952 $a LC pattern: There (The English word)
Example L

Title of work being cataloged: *La novela histórica chilena dentro del marco de la novelística chilena, 1843-1879*.

This is about the Chilean historical novel in the 19th century. No heading for this specific genre exists, but there are numerous other existing headings that supply the appropriate pattern to follow, for example, *Historical fiction, American; Historical fiction, Brazilian; Historical fiction, Mexican*. Relevant sections in the SCM include H 306, H 320, and H 1790.

SACO proposal: *Historical fiction, Chilean*

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings for forms or genres with national adjectival qualifiers.

A classification proposal was also made to add historical fiction to the literature table P-PZ20 so that a number can be added to the subject heading for collections of historical fiction (see second 053 in proposal below and classification proposal example C). It is important to note that such a classification proposal, while beneficial, is extra work that was not actually necessary, because the specific work being cataloged is a work of history and criticism and will class in an already existing number, PQ8007.H5. It would have been acceptable just to include the first 053 in the proposal below without proposing an additional number under collections.

Because diacritics and other special characters cannot be keyed into email in many systems or into the Web-based proposal form, the name of the diacritic or character should be placed in parentheses in front of the letter to which it applies, as shown in the 670 source citation below. When the data keyed into the Web proposal form are moved into the LC authorities system, the correct diacritic or special character will automatically be inserted. Please note that this practice of putting the diacritic in front of the letter to which it applies differs from some other systems, such as OCLC Connexion, in which the diacritic is input after the appropriate letter.

008/06 May Subd Geog

053 0 $a PQ8007.H5 $c History
053 0 $a PQ8076.5.H $c Collections
150  $a Historical fiction, Chilean
450  $a Chilean historical fiction
550  $w g $a Chilean fiction
670  $a Work cat.: L(umlaut)ofquist, E. La novela hist(acute)orica chilena dentro del marco de la novel(acute)istica chilena, 1843-1879, 1995.
952  $a LC pattern: Historical fiction, American; Biographical fiction, Chilean
952  $a Classification proposal faxed to Coop Oct. 14, 1999


**New Subject Proposal Examples**

**Headings for geographic places**

Example M

Title of work being cataloged: *The last forests of Bangladesh*.

The work focuses on the last remaining major forest area in Bangladesh, which it calls Modhupur Forest or Modhupur Garh Forest.

SCM instruction sheet H 690 provides guidance on formulating geographic names and H 810 contains instructions on how such names should be qualified. If available, the form of name approved by the U.S. Board on Geographic Names (BGN) should be obtained and is generally preferred over other forms. In the case of foreign geographic names the GEOnet Names Server (GNS) is the appropriate database to query for the BGN form of name. Additional authority research in standard geographical dictionaries and gazetteers can help to evaluate the form of name used by BGN and/or provide variants to use as cross-references.

In this case, the form of name found in GEOnet and in the *Columbia Gazetteer of the World*, Madhupur Jungle, is different from the forms found in the work being cataloged. The form found in the authoritative reference sources is selected as the heading. The *Columbia Gazetteer* also provides a variant form not found in either the work cat. or GEOnet.

SACO proposal: **Madhupur Jungle (Bangladesh)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded “No Decision.”

Because diacritics and other special characters cannot be keyed into email in many systems or into the Web-based proposal form, the name of the diacritic or character should be placed in parentheses in front of the letter to which it applies. The Web form instructs catalogers to spell out or abbreviate the words “degrees,” “minutes,” and “seconds” when citing coordinates in a 670 field, as shown in the example below.

The form in which the heading is used as a geographic subdivision is determined according to the guidelines in SCM H 830. SCM H 836 provides instructions on how to correctly code this in subject authority records in field 781.

008/06 No Decision

151 $a Madhupur Jungle (Bangladesh)
451 $a Garh Gazali (Bangladesh)
451 $a Modhupur Forest (Bangladesh)
451 $a Modhupur Garh Forest (Bangladesh)
550 $w g $a Forests and forestry $z Bangladesh
Since all 5XXs on authority records must also have their own authority records, the broader term on this proposal, **Forests and forestry--Bangladesh**, must also be an established heading. In a case like this, the 5XX is a "backdoor heading" consisting of an established main heading with a free-floating geographic subdivision. SACO does not require libraries to submit proposals for backdoor headings. If **Forests and forestry--Bangladesh** is not already set up in LCSH, the library can submit a separate proposal to establish it, but if it does not, the authority record for the backdoor heading will be created by staff at LC. Authority records for backdoor headings generally consist solely of the 1XX field, without references or source citations. If submitting a backdoor heading proposal via SACO, a 952 note can be added to explain the reason for the proposal:

150 $a Forests and forestry $z Bangladesh
952 $a Made for reference hierarchy

The 008/06 in the backdoor heading would be coded “No Decision” per instructions in SCM H 364 section 3.
Example N

Title of work being cataloged: *Food and distribution of Arctic char in Lake Aleknagik, Alaska, during the summer of 1962.*

Since the work has as its geographic focus one specific lake, the cataloger will need to use a geographic subdivision for that lake under the main topical heading (*Arctic char*). Since the lake is not yet established, the cataloger must follow the instructions in SCM H 690 to determine the authorized form for this geographic feature. Until the form of the geographic heading itself has been determined, the cataloger cannot know what the correct form is when used as a geographic subdivision. Since this feature is in the U.S. the *Geographic Names Information System* (GNIS) must be searched to obtain the BGN approved form of name. SCM H 690 describes when additional authority research may be required.

In this particular case, the cataloger finds the name “Lake Aleknagik” in GNIS. SCM H 690 instructs catalogers to rearrange the elements of the name for entities in English-speaking countries so that the distinctive portion of the name occurs in the initial position. Thus, the heading will be established in inverted form. The qualifier (Alaska) is added to the heading per SCM H 810. A reference is made from the name in direct order and from the direct and inverted forms of the variant name “Lake Alaknagik” that was found in GNIS.

The form in which the heading is used as a geographic subdivision is determined according to the guidelines in SCM H 830 and included in field 781 per SCM H 836.

SACO proposal: *Aleknagik, Lake (Alaska)*

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded “No Decision.”

SCM H 690 instructs catalogers to add up to three broader term fields (550) with headings for the type of feature subdivided by the place in which the feature is located. Thus a BT for *Lakes—Alaska* is included in the proposal. Since that heading-geographic subdivision combination has already been established, no backdoor heading needs to be created. While doing research on the name, the cataloger also discovered that the lake is part of a group of lakes known as the Wood River Lakes. If an individual feature belongs to a named group, SCM H 690 directs catalogers to also include a 551 broader heading for the named group, provided that a heading for it already exists. Since *Wood River Lakes (Alaska)* is already established, it is added as a broader term. If the heading for a broader group has not yet been established, catalogers are not required to establish it, and no 551 BT is made.

When only one set of geographic coordinates is found in GNIS or *GEOnet* for a place, LC practice is to record them in a 670 citation. If a database provides more than one set
of coordinates for a place, LC practice is to omit them all from the 670 field. The GNIS record for Lake Aleknagik appears below:

**Geographic Names Information System Feature Detail Report**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature ID</th>
<th>1398992</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Lake Aleknagik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Lake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation</td>
<td>Represents a feature name collected during Phase 1 GNIS data compilation (1976-1981), primarily from existing U.S. Geological Survey 1:24,000 scale topographic maps; various edition dates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry Date</td>
<td>31 Mar 1981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elevation(m)</td>
<td>7/2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Variant Names**

**Variant Name**

Lake Alaknagik, Citation

**Counties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>County</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Country</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Dillingham (CA)</td>
<td>070</td>
<td>Alaska</td>
<td>02</td>
<td>US</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Coordinates (One point per USGS topographic map containing the feature, NAD83)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Latitude(DEC)</th>
<th>Longitude(DEC)</th>
<th>Latitude(DMS)</th>
<th>Longitude(DMS)</th>
<th>Map Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>59.339444</td>
<td>-156.8619444</td>
<td>59°20.22N</td>
<td>166°48.07W</td>
<td>Dillingham B-8 SE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>59.276944</td>
<td>-156.6141867</td>
<td>59°16.37N</td>
<td>166°36.51W</td>
<td>Dillingham B-7 SW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>59.448833</td>
<td>-155.0257222</td>
<td>59°26.45N</td>
<td>159°01.47W</td>
<td>Goodnews Bay B-1 NE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

008/06 No Decision

151 $a Aleknagik, Lake (Alaska)
451 $a Alaknagik, Lake (Alaska)
451 $a Lake Alaknagik (Alaska)
451 $a Lake Aleknagik (Alaska)
550 $w g $a Lakes $z Alaska
551 $w g $a Wood River Lakes (Alaska)
670 $a Work cat.: Nelson, M.O. Food and distribution of Arctic char in Lake Aleknagik, Alaska, during the summer of 1962, 1966.
670 $a GNIS, Apr. 15, 2006 $b (Lake Aleknagik, lake, Alaska, Dillingham (CA), variant: Lake Alaknagik)
781 _0 $z Alaska $z Aleknagik, Lake
New Subject Proposal Examples

Example O: Government-designated parks, reserves, forests, monuments, etc.

Title of work being cataloged: *Auyuittuq National Park Reserve*.

In 2005, the Cataloging Policy and Support Office at LC announced the implementation of a new practice regarding the establishment of headings for government-designated parks, forests, reserves, monuments, seashores, recreation areas, etc. The new policy calls for the creation of two separate headings for government-designated parks, forests, etc., one designating the corporate, administrative entity (established as a name heading tagged 110, with the qualifier *(Agency)*, plus a jurisdictional qualifier if required by the descriptive cataloging rules) in the LC/NACO Authority File, and one designating the physical, geographic entity (established as a subject heading tagged 151, usually with a geographic qualifier) in the LC/SACO Authority File. The announcement of this policy (“Implementation of New Practice for Government-Designated Parks, Forests, etc.”) is available from the General, Descriptive Cataloging page of the Cataloging and Acquisitions website (http://www.loc.gov/catdir/cpso/parks2.html). Documentation of the policy is included in the SCM instruction sheet on parks, reserves, national monuments, etc. (H 1925) and in LCRI 24.1A.

When cataloging a work on or emanating from a government-designated park, forest, etc., the cataloger must determine whether he or she needs a main or added entry or subject heading for the corporate body (in which case a name heading tagged 110, 610, or 710 is used) or whether he or she needs a subject heading or subject subdivision for the geographic place (in which case a heading tagged 651 or a topical or form/genre heading subdivided geographically is used).

An example of the two-heading policy can be seen in the authority records for *Everglades National Park (Agency : U.S.)* and *Everglades National Park (Fla.)*. The former was established because it was needed as the main entry for the Park’s annual report. The latter was established for a biological report on the status of the osprey (a bird of prey) in the park, for which it was needed as a geographic subdivision.

010  $a n 2005055410
110 2_ $a Everglades National Park (Agency : U.S.)
410 1_ $a United States. $b National Park Service. $b Everglades National Park
410 2_ $a ENP
670  $a Everglades National Park ... annual report, 1998: $b cover (Everglades National Park, Public Affairs Office)
670  $a National Park Service Everglades National Park home page, 27 July 2005 $b (Spanning the southern tip of the Florida peninsula and most of Florida Bay, Everglades National Park is the only subtropical preserve in North America)
670  $a South Florida Natural Resources Center home page, Aug. 9, 2005 $b (Everglades National Park (ENP))

010  $a sh 91004678
151  $a Everglades National Park (Fla.)
New Subject Proposal Examples

550 $w g $a National parks and reserves $z Florida
670 $a National parks, 1989: $b index, p. 35 (Everglades National Park; Homestead, Fl.)
781 _0 $z Florida $z Everglades National Park

The work being cataloged for this example, Auyuittuq National Park Reserve, is a children’s book describing the park’s features, history, and unique facts. In this case, a geographic subject heading is needed, not an administrative, corporate name heading. The park is located in the Canadian territory of Nunavut and authority research must be done to determine the heading and any variants. For Canadian names, GEOnet can be searched if available, but there is also an official Canadian government database for geographic names that is particularly useful to use as a reference source. However, just relying on that database would not have informed the cataloger that after the work being cataloged was published, the park changed its name to Auyuittuq National Park. Separate geographic subject authorities are not created for earlier/later names, which differs from the practice for geographic name authorities. For subject authorities, the heading is always established under the most recent form of name of the geographic place, with simple see references from any variant forms, including earlier names.

SACO proposal: Auyuittuq National Park (Nunavut)

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded “No Decision.”

008/06 No Decision

151 $a Auyuittuq National Park (Nunavut)
451 $a Auyuittuq National Park Reserve (Nunavut)
451 $a Parc national Auyuittuq (Nunavut)
550 $w g $a National parks and reserves $z Nunavut
670 $a E-mail from Tim Sookocheff, Director, Park Establishment Branch, Parks Canada, Mar. 8, 2000 $b (Designation recently officially changed from "park reserve" to "park", now Auyuittuq National Park in English; Parc national Auyuittuq in French)
670 $a Parks Canada WWW site, Mar. 27, 2000 $b (Auyuittuq National Park in English; Parc national Auyuittuq in French)
670 $a Querying Canadian geographical names WWW site, Mar. 8, 2000 $b (Auyuittuq National Park Reserve; updated information not yet entered in the database)
781 _0 $z Nunavut $z Auyuittuq National Park
**New Subject Proposal Examples**

**Example P: Geographic feature within a city**

Title of work being cataloged: *Master plan, Fort Worden State Park.*

At first, this heading seems straightforward: a subject heading for the physical, geographic entity is needed, not a name heading for the corporate, administrative entity (see example O above for further details on LC’s two-heading policy for government-designated parks, forests, etc.). The name of this park is not found in GNIS, meaning that additional authority research is required. That research reveals that this state park is located within the city limits of Port Townsend, Washington. SCM H 810 instructs catalogers to qualify archaeological sites, parks and gardens, streets and roads, and other man-made geographic structures, by the name of the city. Natural features within cities are qualified by the name of the larger jurisdiction unless a conflict must be resolved. SCM H 830 states that topical subject headings may not be divided geographically to a level lower than that of a city, town, etc. Thus geographic places that are qualified by the name of a city may not be used as geographic subdivisions. Instead of a 781 field showing the form to use as a geographic subdivision, a 667 field must be included containing the text “This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision” (SCM H 836).

**SACO proposal:** *Fort Worden State Park (Port Townsend, Wash.)*

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded “No Decision.”

008/06 No Decision

151 $a Fort Worden State Park (Port Townsend, Wash.)
550 $w g $a Parks $z Washington (State)
667 $a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
670 $a Washington State Parks and Recreation Commission WWW home page, Nov. 30, 1999 $b (Fort Worden State Park; location: within the city limits of Port Townsend, Jefferson County; 433.56 acres with 11,020 feet of saltwater shoreline on Admiralty Inlet and the Strait of Juan de Fuca)
670 $a Sinotte, B. Oregon & Washington, c1996: $b p. 148-149 (Fort Worden State Park; near Port Townsend on Point Wilson; became state park in 1972)
670 $a DeHaan, V. State parks of the West, c1992: $b p. 197 (Fort Worden State Park; one mile north of Port Townsend)
675 $a GNIS, Nov. 30, 1999; $a Washington place names database, via WWW, Nov. 30, 1999
Example Q: Entities in two or more jurisdictions

1) Title of work being cataloged: *The ecology of Volcán Chiles: high-altitude ecosystems on the Ecuador-Colombia border.*

The work focuses on a volcano known in Spanish as Volcán Chiles. As the subtitle indicates, and additional authority research confirms, this volcano is located in two countries: Ecuador and Colombia.

Per SCM H 690, for names of places outside of the U.S. the *GEOnet Names Server* should be consulted to obtain the BGN-approved form of the name. This form is generally preferred, but additional authority research is usually also required to identify name conflicts, variant forms, and other pertinent information. If BGN provides an English form of the name, that form is preferred over others. If no English form is found, H 690 directs catalogers to construct one by translating a generic term in the name into English. If the generic term appears first in the name, the elements are rearranged to put the distinctive portion of the name in the initial position. There are some instances in which the vernacular form of the name is used instead of an English form. H 690 should be consulted for these special cases.

The screen shot below illustrates the results of a *GEOnet* search for places in Colombia with the name “Chiles”:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REGION</th>
<th>DESIG.</th>
<th>LATITUDE</th>
<th>LONGITUDE</th>
<th>AREA</th>
<th>UTM</th>
<th>UCO NO.</th>
<th>UFI</th>
<th>UNI</th>
<th>FPL CLASS</th>
<th>MOD. DATE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BGN Standard</td>
<td></td>
<td>Chiles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1994-05-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>VLC</td>
<td>00° 49' 00&quot; N 077° 57' 00&quot; W CD00</td>
<td>SF78</td>
<td>NA18-13</td>
<td>-580568</td>
<td>-819493</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BGN Standard</td>
<td></td>
<td>Volcán, Chiles</td>
<td>(UNI=819492)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1994-05-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variant</td>
<td></td>
<td>Volcán</td>
<td>(UNI=848114)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BGN Standard</td>
<td></td>
<td>Chiles, Río</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1993-12-08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>STM</td>
<td>00° 49' 00&quot; N 077° 50' 00&quot; W CD20</td>
<td>SF89</td>
<td>NA18-13</td>
<td>-580567</td>
<td>-819491</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BGN Standard</td>
<td></td>
<td>Chiles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2001-01-04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>PFL</td>
<td>00° 49' 45&quot; N 077° 50' 46&quot; W CD20</td>
<td>SF88</td>
<td>NA18-13</td>
<td>-580565</td>
<td>-819489</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Authority research in GEOnet and other reference sources identifies two Spanish forms of name for this volcano, Volcán Chiles and Nevado de Chiles. The BGN-approved form is Volcán Chiles for Colombia and just Chiles for Ecuador. Since the generic term Volcán appears first in the the name, it is translated into English and rearranged to put
New Subject Proposal Examples

Chiles in the initial position. The heading for this entity will therefore be established in LCSH as: Chiles Volcano. References are made from vernacular forms.

According to SCM H 810, when a geographic entity being established as a subject is located in two jurisdictions, include in the qualifier the names of both jurisdictions. Generally, give the jurisdictions in alphabetical order, but if the entity is located primarily in one of them, put that jurisdiction first. SCM H 800 has additional instructions for qualification of rivers in two jurisdictions.

In this case, there is no information that indicates that the volcano lies predominantly in one country. Therefore, the names of the two jurisdictions are given in alphabetical order.

SACO proposal: Chiles Volcano (Colombia and Ecuador)

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded “No Decision.”

SCM H 690 instructs catalogers to include up to three 550 (broader term) fields containing the generic heading for the type of feature, structure, etc., subdivided by country, etc. Volcanoes are also often thought of as mountains, and LC practice is to give references from both of these types of features, each subdivided by jurisdiction. Since in this case the features are in two countries, the BT references are doubled, one for each country. SCM H 690 also directs catalogers to give a 551 BT reference for a named group to which an individual feature belongs, if appropriate. Since authority research indicates that Chiles Volcano is a peak in the Andes Mountains, a broader term reference from Andes is also made.

Per SCM H 830 and H 836, the correct form of the heading when used as a geographic subdivision is determined and recorded in field 781. Geographic regions and features that lie in two or more countries or first order political divisions of the U.S., Canada, and Great Britain are subdivided directly rather than indirectly.

008/06 No Decision

151 $a Chiles Volcano (Colombia and Ecuador)
451 $a Nevado de Chiles (Colombia and Ecuador)
451 $a Volc(acute)an Chiles (Colombia and Ecuador)
551 $w g $a Andes
550 $w g $a Mountains $z Colombia
550 $w g $a Mountains $z Ecuador
550 $w g $a Volcanoes $z Colombia
550 $w g $a Volcanoes $z Ecuador
If any of the broader term headings Mountains--Colombia, Mountains--Ecuador, Volcanoes--Colombia, and Volcanoes--Ecuador were not already established, they could be submitted separately, but this is not required of SAGO participants. LC staff will create authority records for backdoor headings like these as part of the processing of SAGO proposals. In this case, all four backdoor headings were already established and no further action was needed.
New Subject Proposal Examples

2) Title of work being cataloged: *Album starých pohlednic Lužických hor a Ještědu* = *Album alter Ansichtskarten vom Lausitzer-, Zittauer- und Jeschkengebirge*.

This book in Czech and German reproduces old postcards illustrating places in three mountain ranges of central Europe, and includes descriptive information about the places depicted on the postcards. The book calls one of these ranges “Lužické hory” in Czech and “Lausitzergebirge” or “Lausitzer Gebirge” in German.

Searching the *GEOnet Names Server* for the BGN-approved form of name shows that the approved name in Germany is Lausitzer Gebirge and in the Czech Republic, Lužické Hory. *GEOnet* does not provide an English form. Further authority research does identify an English name, Lusatian Mountains, that they are located in the Czech Republic, Germany, and Poland, and that they are part of the Sudeten Mountains. It also identifies the Polish name for the mountains, Góry Lużyckie. According to SCM H 690, for geographic names in non-English-speaking countries, reference sources may justify the choice of the conventional English form when BGN has supplied the name only in the vernacular form. Thus for this heading, the English form, Lusatian Mountains, can be chosen over the German, Czech, or Polish forms. References are made from the vernacular forms.

Once the form of the heading has been decided, the qualifier must then be considered. For entities in more than two jurisdictions, SCM H 810 says to use no qualifier unless it is necessary to distinguish between two entities by the same name or to clarify an ambiguous term. In this case, there is no conflict or ambiguity, so the heading gets no qualifier.

SACO proposal: Lusatian Mountains

The 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded “No Decision” per instructions in SCM H 364.

For broader terms, up to three 550 fields containing the generic heading for the type of feature subdivided by country (or first order political division of the United States, Canada, and Great Britain) can be included per SCM H 690. For features in more than three countries or first order political divisions of the U.S., Canada, and Great Britain, catalogers are directed to use an appropriate broader geographic name as the subdivision. In this case, the feature type heading Mountains will be recorded in three 550 BT fields, each subdivided by one of the countries in which the Lusatian Mountains are located.

SCM H 690 also directs catalogers to give a 551 BT reference for a named group to which an individual feature belongs, if appropriate. Since authority research indicates that the Lusatian Mountains are part of the Sudeten, this additional BT will be included.

Per SCM H 830 and H 836, the correct form of the heading when used as a geographic subdivision is determined and recorded in field 781. Geographic regions and features
that lie in two or more countries or first order political divisions of the U.S., Canada, and Great Britain are subdivided directly rather than indirectly.

008/06 No Decision

151 $a Lusatian Mountains
451 $a G(acute)ory Lu(acute)zyckie
451 $a Lausitzer Gebirge
451 $a Lausitzergebirge
451 $a Lu(hacek)zick(acute)e hory
451 $a Vrchovina Lu(hacek)zick(acute)a
550 $w g $a Mountains $z Czech Republic
550 $w g $a Mountains $z Germany
550 $w g $a Mountains $z Poland
551 $w g $a Sudeten
670 $a Work cat.: Karpa(hacek)s, R. Album star(acute)y ch pohlednic Lu(hacek)zick(acute)y ch hor a Je(hacek)st(hacek)ed, 2000: $b t.p. (Lausitzergebirge)
670 $a GEOnet, May 16, 2006 $b (Lausitzer Gebirge, MTS, Germany, 50deg.45min.N, 014deg.50min.E; Lu(hacek)zick(acute)e Hory, Czech Republic; variant: Lu(hacek)zick(acute)a, Vrchovina)
670 $a Columbia gazetteer of the world, c1998 $b (Lusatian Mountians, Czech Lu(hacek)zick(acute)e hory, Ger. Lausitzer Gebirge, Pol. G(acute)ory Lu(acute)zyckie, westernmost range of the Sudetes, in Upper Lusatia, along Czech borders with Germany and Poland)
670 $a Getty thesaurus of geog. names online, May 16, 2006 $b (Lusatian Mountains (mountains), Severocesky Kraj (region), Czech Republic. Luzick(acute)e hory (Czech), Lausitzer Gebirge (German). The Lusatian Mountains are located in extreme northern Bohemia in the Czech Republic, part of the Sudeten Mountains. The chain stretches from the Elbe river in the west to the Jested ridge in the east, with branches extending into Germany and Poland.)
675 $a Merriam-Web. geog. dict., c1997
781 _0 $z Lusatian Mountains

Since the broader terms Mountains--Czech Republic, Mountains--Germany, and Mountains--Poland are already established, no backdoor headings need to be created as part of this proposal.
New Subject Proposal Examples

Example R: Conflicts between geographic entities with same name

The examples below illustrate the principle that catalogers must identify conflicts between geographic entities with the same name, and they show how to resolve such conflicts.

1) Title of work being cataloged: Home range and movement of nutria (Myocastor coypus) at Spring Lake in central Texas, with anecdotal comments on the American beaver (Castor canadensis) of the same area.

The geographic focus of this work is a lake in Texas named Spring Lake. The lake will be used as a geographic subdivision under the topical headings for the two animals discussed in this work. In order to assign the correct form of geographic subdivision, the heading for the lake must first be determined. SCM H 690 provides instructions on determining headings for geographic features. For a feature in the U.S., the cataloger must consult the Geographic Names Information System (GNIS) to ascertain the BGN approved form of name.

A search for Spring Lake in Texas in GNIS shows that there is more than one body of water with that name in the state:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Facility Name</th>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>County</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Latitude</th>
<th>Longitude</th>
<th>East</th>
<th>North</th>
<th>BGN</th>
<th>Entry Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spring Lake</td>
<td>1389923</td>
<td>Lake</td>
<td>Lamb</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>3413532N</td>
<td>1033861W</td>
<td>3697</td>
<td>30-NOV-1978</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring Lake</td>
<td>1389920</td>
<td>Reservoir</td>
<td>McLennan</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>313612N</td>
<td>1070832W</td>
<td>459</td>
<td>30-NOV-1978</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring Lake Dam</td>
<td>1389927</td>
<td>Dam</td>
<td>Walker</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>304018N</td>
<td>953332W</td>
<td>361</td>
<td>11-APR-2000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring Lake</td>
<td>1380969</td>
<td>Reservoir</td>
<td>Walker</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>304019N</td>
<td>953332W</td>
<td>361</td>
<td>11-APR-2000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring Lake</td>
<td>1389923</td>
<td>Lake</td>
<td>Leon</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>313548N</td>
<td>954344W</td>
<td>361</td>
<td>30-NOV-1978</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring Lake</td>
<td>1397744</td>
<td>Lake</td>
<td>Dallas</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>324719N</td>
<td>96632W</td>
<td>420</td>
<td>30-NOV-1978</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring Park Lake</td>
<td>1389921</td>
<td>Reservoir</td>
<td>Anderson</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>314568N</td>
<td>955322W</td>
<td>397</td>
<td>30-NOV-1978</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring Creek Country Club Dam</td>
<td>1380960</td>
<td>Dam</td>
<td>Houston</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>312207N</td>
<td>953320W</td>
<td>299</td>
<td>11-APR-2000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring Creek Country Club Lake</td>
<td>1380960</td>
<td>Reservoir</td>
<td>Houston</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>312207N</td>
<td>953320W</td>
<td>299</td>
<td>11-APR-2000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring Lake</td>
<td>1347745</td>
<td>Reservoir</td>
<td>Harris</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>293268N</td>
<td>976362W</td>
<td>574</td>
<td>30-NOV-1978</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schenectady Springs</td>
<td>1999515</td>
<td>Spring</td>
<td>Kinney</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>293231N</td>
<td>108531W</td>
<td>1869</td>
<td>17-SEP-2003</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitchell Lake Spring</td>
<td>1989904</td>
<td>Spring</td>
<td>Baird</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>281831N</td>
<td>982331W</td>
<td>516</td>
<td>17-SEP-2003</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring Lake</td>
<td>1980910</td>
<td>Reservoir</td>
<td>Anderson</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>314731N</td>
<td>955145W</td>
<td>226</td>
<td>27-JUL-2001</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring Lake Park</td>
<td>1389922</td>
<td>Park</td>
<td>Bowie</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>332735N</td>
<td>964330W</td>
<td>367</td>
<td>30-NOV-1978</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring Lake Park School</td>
<td>1389923</td>
<td>School</td>
<td>Bowie</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>332735N</td>
<td>964330W</td>
<td>344</td>
<td>30-NOV-1978</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The work being cataloged indicates that the Spring Lake in question is located in Hays County. GNIS does have a listing for this particular body of water:

---

**Geographic Names Information System Feature Detail Report**

- **Feature ID**: 1347745
- **Name**: Spring Lake
- **Class**: Reservoir
  

- **Citation**: 1:24,000-scale topographic maps (or 1:25K, Puerto Rico 1:20K), various edition dates, and from U.S. Board on Geographic Names files.
- **Entry Date**: 30 Nov 1979
- **Elevation (ft/m)**: 574.175

**Counties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>County</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Country</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Hays</td>
<td>209</td>
<td>Texas</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>US</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Coordinates (One point per USGS topographic map containing the feature, NAD83)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Latitude(DEC)</th>
<th>Longitude(DEC)</th>
<th>Latitude(DMS)</th>
<th>Longitude(DMS)</th>
<th>Map Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>28.68043900</td>
<td>-97.93338400</td>
<td>28°40'01&quot;N</td>
<td>97°52'06&quot;W</td>
<td>San Marcos North</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SCM H 810 instructs catalogers that if there are two or more entities with the same name in the same jurisdiction, to formulate a distinctive qualifier according to one of two methods:

a) If the entities in question are of the same type (e.g., they are all lakes), add to the qualifier the name of the next smaller jurisdiction (county, department, province, etc.).
b) If the entities in question are of different types (e.g., a populated place and a lake), add to the qualifier a generic term, in English, designating the type of entity. Separate this term from the geographic term within the qualifier by a space, a colon, and another space.

Since all of the Spring Lakes listed for Texas in GNIS are lakes or reservoirs, method a) is used to create a qualifier that will differentiate the Spring Lake in question from all of the others in Texas. Once the heading for the lake has been determined, the cataloger can then determine the correct form to use for geographic subdivision according to the guidelines in SCM H 830. This form is included in field 781 per SCM H 836.

SACO proposal: **Spring Lake (Hays County, Tex.)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded “No Decision.”

The broader term(s) included in subject authority records for geographic features are headings for the type of feature subdivided by the place in which the feature is located (SCM H 690). For reservoirs that have “Lake” in their name, LC typically adds both **Lakes** and **Reservoirs** as broader term references. Although the qualifier in the heading includes a county, BTs are subdivided only through the country or through the first-order political division for the U.S. (states), Canada (provinces and territories), and Great Britain (constituent countries).

151  $a Spring Lake (Hays County, Tex.)
550  $w g $a Lakes $z Texas
550  $w g $a Reservoirs $z Texas
670  $a Work cat.: Denena, M.M. Home range and movement of nutria (Myocastor coypus) at Spring Lake in central Texas ... 2003: $b p. 2 (Spring Lake is located within the city limits of San Marcos, Hays County, Texas; approx. 8 ha reservoir that is fed by an estimated 200 springs arising from the Edwards Aquifer; the lake is dammed 460 meters downstream from the headwaters)
670  $a GNIS, Dec. 22, 2003 $b (Spring Lake, reservoir, Texas, Hays Co., 29deg.53min.25sec.N 097deg.56min.01sec.W; other lakes with same name in other Texas counties)
781 _0 $z Texas $z Spring Lake (Hays County)
2) Title of work being cataloged: *Bluewater/Wabana Lakes*.

The work being cataloged is a map showing two lakes in Minnesota. Research in GNIS shows that there is only one Bluewater Lake in Minnesota.

### Geographic Names Information System Feature Query Results

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>County</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Latitude</th>
<th>Longitude</th>
<th>Map</th>
<th>Elevation</th>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Entry Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bluewater Lake</td>
<td>655460</td>
<td>Lake</td>
<td>Itasca</td>
<td>MN</td>
<td>472511N</td>
<td>0933313W</td>
<td>Wabana Lake</td>
<td>1319</td>
<td>1941</td>
<td>11-JAN-1980</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

However, GNIS lists Blue Lake as a variant name for this lake:

### Geographic Names Information System Feature Detail Report

- **Feature ID:** 655460
- **Name:** Bluewater Lake
- **Class:** Lake
- **Collected during Phase I data compilation (1976-1981), primarily from U.S. Geological Survey**
- **Citation:** 1:24,000 scale topographic maps (or 1:25K, Puerto Rico 1:20K), various edition dates, and from U.S. Board on Geographic Names files.
- **Entry Date:** 11-Jan-1980
- **Elevation(ft/m):** 1319/402

### Variant Names

- **Variant Name:** Blue Lake
- **Citation:**

### Board on Geographic Names Decisions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Decision Year</th>
<th>Authority</th>
<th>Decision Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bluewater Lake</td>
<td>1941</td>
<td>Board</td>
<td>Decision</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Counties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>County</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Country</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Itasca</td>
<td>061</td>
<td>Minnesota</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>US</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Coordinates (One point per USGS topographic map containing the feature, NAD83)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Latitude(DEC)</th>
<th>Longitude(DEC)</th>
<th>Latitude(DMS)</th>
<th>Longitude(DMS)</th>
<th>Map Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>47.4196642</td>
<td>-93.5535376</td>
<td>47°25′11″N</td>
<td>093°33′13″W</td>
<td>Wabana Lake</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Catalogers must search for conflicts for both authorized names and variants. A search for Blue Lake in GNIS reveals that there are other lakes in Minnesota named Blue Lake:

**New Subject Proposal Examples**

Since there is no conflict between the name Bluewater Lake and any other geographic place in Minnesota, the qualifier used for the heading will be the abbreviated form of the state name: \(\text{Minn.}\). However, since there is a conflict between the variant name Blue Lake and other lakes in Minnesota with the same name, the qualifier in the reference for the variant name will need to resolve this conflict. When there are two or more entities with the same name in the same jurisdiction, and the entities are all of the same type (e.g., all lakes), SCM H 810 says to resolve the conflict by adding to the qualifier the name of the next smaller jurisdiction. The qualifier in the reference from Blue Lake thus becomes \(\text{Itasca County, Minn.}\).

**SACO proposal: Bluewater Lake (Minn.)**

151 $a Bluewater Lake (Minn.)
451 $a Blue Lake (Itasca County, Minn.)
550 $w g $a Lakes $z Minnesota
670 $a Work cat.: Minnesota. Dept. of Natural Resources. Bluewater/Wabana Lakes, 1992: $b map verso (Bluewater Lake, 364 acres, max. depth of 120 feet)
670 $a GNIS, Sept. 21, 1999 $b (Bluewater Lake, lake, Minn., Itasca Co., 47deg.25min.11sec.N, 093deg.33min.12sec.W, variant name: Blue Lake; other Blue Lakes in other counties)
781 _0 $z Minnesota $z Bluewater Lake
3) Title of work being cataloged: Highlead logging operation, Cavanaugh Lake, Washington.

This is a digital reproduction of a 1937 photograph by Darius Kinsey. It is part of an online collection of the photographer’s images. Each digital image has associated metadata, including LC subject headings. The correct form of heading for Cavanaugh Lake must be determined in order to include it in the metadata.

Research in GNIS shows that the BGN approved form of name of this lake is Lake Cavanaugh rather than Cavanaugh Lake:

Following instructions in SCM H 690 to rearrange the elements of the name so that the distinctive portion of the name occurs in the initial position, the heading will be established in inverted form.

GNIS also shows that there is both a lake and a populated place called Lake Cavanaugh in Washington state. To break a conflict between entities of different types, SCM H 810 directs the cataloger to add to the qualifier a generic term, in English, designating the type of entity, and to separate this term from the geographic term within the qualifier by a space, a colon, and another space.

SCM H 830 provides information on how to formulate geographic subdivisions correctly. The form of the heading when used as a geographic subdivision is included in field 781 of the authority record per instructions in SCM H 836.

SACO proposal: Cavanaugh, Lake (Wash. : Lake)

151 $a Cavanaugh, Lake (Wash. : Lake)
451 $a Cavanaugh Lake (Wash.)
451 $a Lake Cavanaugh (Wash. : Lake)
550 $w g $a Lakes $z Washington (State)
670 $a GNIS, Sept. 21, 2005 $b (Lake Cavanaugh, lake, Skagit Co., Washington, variant: Cavanaugh Lake; also Lake Cavanaugh, pop. place, Skagit Co.)
781 _0 $z Washington (State) $z Cavanaugh, Lake (Lake)
The qualifier in the reference from the form Cavanaugh Lake is just (Wash.) because there is no conflict between this form and any other entity in Washington state.
4) Title of work being cataloged: *Diamond Lake warmwater fishery assessment, fall 1999*.

The work deals with a lake in Pend Oreille County, Washington. Diamond Lake is both a lake and a populated place in Pend Oreille County, as well as the name of lakes in other Washington counties:

Because the conflict is between entities of different types and also between entities of the same type, both the next smaller jurisdiction and the type of entity must be included in the qualifier (SCM H 810).

SACO proposal: **Diamond Lake (Pend Oreille County, Wash. : Lake)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>County</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Latitude</th>
<th>Longitude</th>
<th>Map</th>
<th>Entry Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diamond Lake</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>Lake</td>
<td>Yakima</td>
<td>WA</td>
<td>46.2739N</td>
<td>121.1154W</td>
<td>Jenning's Buff</td>
<td>10-SEP-1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diamond Lake</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>Lake</td>
<td>Shuswap</td>
<td>WA</td>
<td>48.1151N</td>
<td>121.4157W</td>
<td>Lime Mountain</td>
<td>10-SEP-1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diamond Lake</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>Lake</td>
<td>Pend Oreille</td>
<td>WA</td>
<td>48.0152N</td>
<td>121.1152W</td>
<td>Diamond Lake</td>
<td>10-SEP-1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diamond Lake</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>Populated Place</td>
<td>Pend Oreille</td>
<td>WA</td>
<td>48.0152</td>
<td>121.1152</td>
<td>Cameron</td>
<td>10-SEP-1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue Diamond Lake</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>Lake</td>
<td>Okanogan</td>
<td>WA</td>
<td>49.5556N</td>
<td>119.3224W</td>
<td>Oroville</td>
<td>31-DEC-1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diamond Lake</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>Lake</td>
<td>Kittitas</td>
<td>WA</td>
<td>47.2632N</td>
<td>121.2904W</td>
<td>Palouse Ridge</td>
<td>10-SEP-1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black Diamond Lake</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>Lake</td>
<td>King</td>
<td>WA</td>
<td>47.1751N</td>
<td>122.0102W</td>
<td>Black Diamond</td>
<td>10-SEP-1979</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 7
Example S: Undifferentiated geographic feature

Title of work being cataloged: *Fort McPherson, NT caribou harvest study.*

The work is about the 1992-93 caribou harvest by hunters from Fort McPherson, Northwest Territories. Ninety percent of the caribou harvested were taken in the Yukon Territory, primarily in the Rock River area. There is no authority record for the Rock River, so the cataloger does research to establish it. The *GEO*net Names Server lists three Rock Rivers in Canada, two of which are in the Yukon (area code CA12 below):

![Geonames Search Results](image)

The cataloger determines that the particular Rock River discussed in the work being cataloged is the one at 67°19'00"N 137°05'00"W. Ordinarily, conflicts between geographic entities with the same name must be resolved. SCM H 800 states that “in the event that there are two or more rivers with the same name in the same jurisdiction, qualify by the name of the appropriate smaller jurisdiction, in accordance with the provisions of H 810.”

For U.S. states, the next smallest political jurisdiction is the county (borough or census area in Alaska, parish in Louisiana). In Canada, the next smallest political division below province or territory is called many different things. Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Island have counties. Québec has regional county municipalities. British Columbia has regional districts. Alberta, Saskatchewan, Manitoba, and Newfoundland and Labrador have census divisions. Ontario has three different types of census divisions: single-tier municipalities, upper-tier municipalities (which can be regional municipalities or counties), and districts. The Northwest Territories and Nunavut are divided into regions. The Yukon has no census divisions and is considered a census division in itself.
In the rare cases where no smaller jurisdiction can be added to a qualifier to resolve a conflict, an undifferentiated geographic feature heading is established and one heading is used for all of the features in a jurisdiction with the same name. LC indicates this in subject authority records by adding in a 670 citation the text “Cannot differentiate; hdg. is used for both” (or “for all” if more than two features with the same name).

Since the Yukon does not have any appropriate smaller political jurisdictions that can be used to distinguish the two Rock Rivers there, one heading is proposed that will represent both rivers.

SACO proposal: **Rock River (Yukon)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded “No Decision.”

008/06 No Decision

151  $a Rock River (Yukon)  
550  $w g $a Rivers $z Yukon  
670  $a Work cat.: Nagy, J.A. Fort McPherson, NT caribou harvest study, 1993: $b p. iii (Rock River area; Yukon)  
670  $a GEOnet, Jan. 2, 2002 $b (Rock River, STM, Canada, Yukon, 67deg.19min.00sec.N 137deg.05min.00sec.W; also, Rock River, STM, Canada, Yukon, 60deg.06min.00sec.N 127deg.08min.00sec.W; Cannot differentiate; hdg. used for both)  
781 _0 $z Yukon $z Rock River
New Subject Proposal Examples

Headings for named buildings, building details, and structures

Example T

Title of the work being cataloged: The Carnegie Mansion Reunion.

This work is about the Columbia University School of Social Work, which used to reside in the Carnegie Mansion, and also about the building itself.

Research shows that this structure was initially a private mansion which currently houses a museum. According to SCM H 405, a heading for this type of structure will reside in the LC/SACO Authority File with a 110 MARC tag (see p. 107 (1XX: Headings) and p. 112 (110: Corporate Name)).

SCM H 1334 provides instructions on how to formulate headings for buildings and other structures. “Carnegie Mansion” appears to be the predominant name in the reference sources. Other variants found are used as cross references. According to H 1334 section 3, a geographic qualifier must be added to the name. The building is located in New York City, so the heading established in the LC/NACO Authority file for the city is used as the qualifier, but reformulated by placing it within a single set of parentheses as instructed in SCM H 810 section 1c. Thus New York (N.Y.) becomes (New York, N.Y.) when used as a qualifier.

SACO proposal: Carnegie Mansion (New York, N.Y.)

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for named buildings and structures is coded “No Decision.”

008/06 No Decision

110 2_ $a Carnegie Mansion (New York, N.Y.)
410 2_ $a Andrew Carnegie Mansion (New York, N.Y.)
410 2_ $a Andrew Carnegie Residence (New York, N.Y)
550 $w g $a Dwellings $z New York (State)
670 $a Cooper-Hewitt WWW Web site, Jan. 13, 2003 $b (The Carnegie Mansion; East Ninety-first St. in Manhattan)
670 $a Grove dict. of art online, Jan. 13, 2003: $b under Hardy Holzmann Pfeiffer Associates (Hardy Holzmann Pfeiffer Associates renovated the Andrew Carnegie Mansion, New York, designed by Babb, Cook & Willard in 1901, to house the Cooper-Hewitt Museum in 1976) under Babb, Cook & Willard (The Andrew Carnegie Residence (1899-1901; now the Cooper-Hewitt Museum) on Fifth Ave., New York)
Example U

Title of work being cataloged: *The Old Senate Chamber, 1810-1859*.

This pamphlet describes the history of the Old Senate Chamber in the U.S. Capitol Building in Washington, D.C.

According to SCM H 405, buildings occupied by corporate bodies, and named building details such as windows, doors, domes, and rooms, are established as subject headings in the LC/SACO Authority File. Buildings are tagged 110 and building details are tagged 150. Instructions for establishing names of buildings and named building details are found in SCM H 1334. Building details are entered directly under their name and qualified by the name of the building, generally followed by a comma and the geographic location of the building. The name of the building in the qualifier must also be established if it is not already in the authority file.

Since the Old Senate Chamber is a room within the U.S. Capitol, it can be established as a topical heading under its own name. The qualifier will be the heading for the Capitol.

SACO proposal: **Old Senate Chamber (United States Capitol, Washington, D.C.)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for named buildings and structures is coded “No Decision.”

Broader terms for the type of building detail subdivided geographically by place, and for the name of the building in which the detail is located, are included in the authority record.

008/06 No Decision

150 $a Old Senate Chamber (United States Capitol, Washington, D.C.)
550 $w g $a Rooms $z Washington (D.C.)
510 2_ $w g $a United States Capitol (Washington, D.C.)
670 $a Work cat.: The Old Senate Chamber, 1810-1859, 2000 $b (Capitol Building; Senate chamber on the second floor designed by Benjamin Henry Latrobe; Senate resided there from 1810 to 1859; U.S. Supreme Court occupied the room from 1860 to 1935; in 1976, the Old Senate Chamber was restored to its 1850s appearance)
670 $a The United States Congress & Capitol, 1999: $b v. 1, p. 40, etc. (Old Senate Chamber; the third chamber created for the use of the Senate in the Capitol; used 1810-1859)
952 $a LC pattern: Lyndon Baines Johnson Room (United States Capitol, Washington, D.C.)
New Subject Proposal Examples

Since the heading for the United States Capitol is already established, a second proposal for it is not needed. If the backdoor heading *Rooms--Washington (D.C.)* is not already established, CPSO staff will create an authority record for it.
Example V

Title of work being cataloged: *Preliminary report on traffic and revenues for the proposed Fountain Square underground parking garage.*

The cataloger needs a heading for Fountain Square, a plaza in Cincinnati, Ohio. Instructions for establishing names of buildings and other structures are found in SCM H 1334. Guidance on how to tag headings for structures can be found in H 405. The tagging varies depending on the type of structure, e.g.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bridges</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canals</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortresses</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fountains</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gates</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lighthouses</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuments (Structures,</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statues, etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plazas (Open spaces,</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>squares, etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pools, Public</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Racetracks</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streets</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tombs</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towers</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunnels</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walls</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Non-geographic structures such as arches, shrines, gates, monuments, and towers are tagged 150. Structures such as plazas, bridges, highways, docks, and tunnels are considered geographic and tagged 151. Other structures such as public pools, power plants, lighthouses, and racetracks are treated as buildings and tagged as corporate body headings (110).

Since Fountain Square is a type of plaza, it will be coded as a geographic heading. According to SCM H 1334, enter the heading for a particular building or structure directly under its own name, in uninverted form, and qualify it by the name(s) of the jurisdiction(s) in which the structure is located. For structures in cities, the qualifier is the name(s) of the city or cities as established in the LC/NACO Authority File. If a city is not yet established, it must be established through NACO. Consult SCM H 1334 for complete details on qualifiers for buildings and other structures.

SACO proposal: **Fountain Square (Cincinnati, Ohio)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for named buildings and structures is coded “No Decision.”
New Subject Proposal Examples

Broader term references are made for the type of structure subdivided geographically by country or first order political division of the U.S., Canada, and Great Britain. Because this geographic heading is located in a city, the heading may not be used as a geographic subdivision (see SCM H 836). A 667 field containing the standardized wording “This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision” is included in the record.

008/06 No Decision

151 $a Fountain Square (Cincinnati, Ohio)
550 $w g $a Plazas $z Ohio
667 $a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
670 $a Work cat.: Preliminary report on traffic and revenues for the proposed Fountain Square underground parking garage, 1959.
670 $a Cincinnati, the Queen City, c1988: $b p. 139 (new Fountain Square dedicated Oct. 16, 1971, 100 years and 10 days after the original dedication)
670 $a Wikipedia, via WWW, July 18, 2006: $b Cincinnati, Ohio article (Fountain Square is a public square located at Fifth and Vine Streets in downtown Cincinnati; its centerpiece is the landmark bronze Tyler Davidson Fountain; the space was donated to the city of Cincinnati by prominent citizen Henry Probasco and dedicated on its completion in 1871 to his brother-in-law, Tyler Davidson)
670 $a GNIS, July 18, 2006 $b (Fountain Square, Hamilton County, OH, Park; 39deg.06min.04sec.N, 84deg.30min.37sec.W)

If the backdoor heading Plazas--Ohio is not already established, CPSO staff will create an authority record for it.

For additional examples of non-geographic and geographic structures, consult Appendix A. Examples there include: Albert Memorial Clock (Belfast, Northern Ireland); Henry A. Niewoehner Memorial Bell Tower (Rugby, N.D.); Porta Nigra (Trier, Germany); Alexanderplatz (Berlin, Germany); Fisherman’s Wharf (San Francisco, Calif.); John A. Roebling Bridge (Cincinnati, Ohio, and Covington, Ky.); Meridian Avenue (Seattle and Shoreline, Wash.); Washington State Route 520 (Wash.).
Headings with non-geographic qualifiers

Example W

Title of work being cataloged: The art of pictorial photography, 1890-1925.

Photography, Pictorial and Pictorial photography were references under the established heading Photography, Artistic, but that heading is too broad for the work being cataloged. Pictorial photography is also the name of a specific movement within artistic photography; subject access for this movement is needed. Authority research shows that the term “pictorialism” is preferred over “pictorial photography.” The heading is qualified because “pictorialism” could be a concept associated with literature or other arts. The reference must also be qualified to distinguish it from the general term that is a cross-reference on the broader heading.

SACO proposal: Pictorialism (Photography movement)

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings that represent topics that have a geographic orientation, or that could be discussed in relation to a place or to a population in a particular location, including disciplines and fields of study. A check of other headings representing artistic movements (e.g., Neoromanticism (Art movement); Symbolism (Art movement)) would show that they are authorized to be subdivided geographically.

008/06 May Subd Geog

150 $a Pictorialism (Photography movement)
450 $a Pictorial photography (Photography movement)
550 $w g $a Photography, Artistic
670 $a AAT $b (Pictorialist; use with reference to the 19th-century movement in photography)
670 $a Atkins, R. Artspoke, c1993 $b (Pictorialism; 1886 to 1914; Europe and U.S.; important groups: Photo-Secession in N.Y., Linked Ring in London; related: 291; Secession)
670 $a Intl. Center of Photog. encyc. of photog., c1984 $b (Pictorial photography; Pictorialism)
670 $a The photo-secession : the golden age of pictorial photography in America, c1983.
680 $i Here are entered works on the late 19th century and early 20th century photography movement interested in recognition of photography as an art form and often represented by soft-focus, impressionistic images.
952 $a SCM H 1250
952 $a LC pattern: Impressionism (Art); Symbolism (Art movement)
New Subject Proposal Examples

Example X

Title of work being cataloged: *Golden years*, a detective novel by John Preston featuring the fictitious character Alex Kane. The library also has other novels by this author featuring the same character.

SCM H 1610 provides instructions on how to establish headings for fictitious characters. LC policy is to assign headings for fictitious characters to collections of literary texts featuring the character. LC will also assign such headings to individual plays or poems if the character has been borrowed by the author from another author or source and used in the creation of a new work. Libraries that follow the *Guidelines on Subject Access to Individual Works of Fiction, Drama, Etc.* (2nd ed., American Library Association, 2000) may assign headings for fictitious and legendary characters and groups to individual works of fiction, drama, poetry, humor, folklore, and music if the characters or groups appear prominently in three or more works. LC assigns such headings to individual works of fiction only as cataloging resources permit.

Since no heading for the Alex Kane character has been established, and since the character appears in three or more works, the SACO library can propose a heading for it.

**SACO proposal: Kane, Alex (Fictitious character)**

The proposed heading is coded “Not Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say headings for names of fictitious and legendary characters are not authorized for geographic subdivision.

008/06 Not Subd Geog

150 $a Kane, Alex (Fictitious character)
450 $a Alex Kane (Fictitious character)
670 $a Work cat.: Preston, J. *Golden years*, c1984: $b cover (The mission of Alex Kane ; #2)
670 $a Preston, J. *Stolen moments*, c1985: $b cover (The mission of Alex Kane ; #4)
670 $a Preston, J. *Lethal silence*, c1987: $b cover (The mission of Alex Kane ; #6)
Headings also appropriate for use as a free-floating subdivision

Example Y

Title of work being cataloged: *Essential blogging*.

The work being cataloged is about weblogs, also commonly known as blogs. At the time the book was received, there was no heading to describe this new phenomenon. After doing research, the cataloger determines that the standard term for these resources is weblogs and deems that a SACO proposal is warranted.

SACO proposal: **Weblogs**

Per instructions in SCM H 364, the proposed heading is coded as authorized for geographic subdivision.

In the course of doing authority research, it becomes apparent that it would be useful to also establish --**Weblogs** as a free-floating subdivision, since weblogs exist on a multitude of subjects, and a library may select them for cataloging. Weblogs can also be about the person creating the weblog, so in addition to authorizing a new subdivision under topical headings, it should be authorized under individual persons and classes of persons and ethnic groups.

There is no proposal form to create free-floating subdivisions. They can be proposed by including a general see also reference to the subdivision (field 360) in the record for the corresponding main heading (see SCM H 371 and examples on p. 128 of this manual), or by establishing the subdivision under one of the pattern headings in the SCM (see SCM H 1146 and example BB below (p. 79)). If approved, CPSO will create the actual free-floating subdivision authority records and add the subdivision to the appropriate list(s) in the SCM.

Since the Web proposal form does not have a specific box for general see also notes, text intended for field 360 should be input in the comments box, and a member of the Cooperative Cataloging Team will transcribe it into the proper field.

008/06 May Subd Geog

150 $a Weblogs
360 $i subdivision $a Weblogs $i under names of individual persons, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings
450 $a Blogging
450 $a Blogs
450 $a Filters (Weblogs)
450 $a Newspages (Weblogs)
450 $a Web logs
550 $w g $a Diaries
After the proposal was approved including the general see also note, LC staff created the free-floating form and topical subdivision authority records for --Weblogs:

073  $a H 1095 $a H 1100 $a H 1103 $a H 1110 $z lcsh
185  $v Weblogs
680  $i Use as a form subdivision under names of individual persons, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for weblogs by those persons or about those persons, groups, or topics.
681  $i Reference under the heading $a Weblogs
073  $a H 1095 $a H 1100 $a H 1103 $a H 1110 $z lcsh
180  $x Weblogs
680 $i Use as a topical subdivision under names of individual persons, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for weblogs by those persons or about those persons, groups, or topics.

681 $i Reference under the heading $a Weblogs

Note: In February 2006, LC changed the subject heading and the subdivisions from Weblogs to Blogs because the latter term had become the predominant form in popular usage. The authority record was revised by LC to:

008/06 May Subd Geog

150 $a Blogs
360 $i subdivision $a Blogs $i under names of individual persons, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings
450 $a Blogging
450 $a Web logs
450 $w nne $a Weblogs
550 $w g $a Diaries
550 $w g $a Web sites
670 $a Work cat.: Essential blogging, c2002: $b cover (weblog)
670 $a Wikipedia, Jan. 20, 2006 $b (A blog is a website in which items are posted on a regular basis and displayed in reverse chronological order. The term blog is a shortened form of weblog or web log. Authoring a blog, maintaining a blog or adding an article to an existing blog is called “blogging”. Individual articles on a blog are called “blog posts,” “posts” or “entries”. A person who posts these entries is called a “blogger”)
670 $a Seattle times, Feb. 24, 2003, via WWW, viewed Feb. 26, 2003 $b (“Weblogs, for the uninitiated, are personal journals (a term I prefer to diaries) published on the Internet. They're essentially Web sites but differ by being almost all text and by being updated often, sometimes every few minutes. They tend to contain little original content beyond musings and commentaries, but what they're good at is immediacy so-called real-time information and at linking, whether it be to published articles, e-mail threads, other Weblogs or whatever. The power of blogs, as they're nicknamed, comes from the Web's one-to-many publishing capabilities.”; blogging)
670 $a Barger, J. Weblog resources FAQ, via WWW, Feb. 26, 2003 $b (A weblog (sometimes called a blog or a newspaper or a filter) is a webpage where a blogger (sometimes called a blogger, or a pre-surfer) “logs” all the other pages she finds interesting. The format is normally to add the newest entry at the top of the page, so that repeat visitors can catch up by simply reading down the page until they reach a link they saw on their last visit. (This causes some minor, unavoidable confusions when the logger comments on an earlier link that the visitor hasn't reached yet.))
New Subject Proposal Examples

Headings with non-free-floating subdivisions

Example Z

Title of work being cataloged: Farm folk, city folk: stories, tips, and recipes celebrating local food for food lovers of all stripes.

This work is about the pleasures of fresh, flavorful local food and celebrates the farmers and herb gardeners, seed sellers and greenhouse growers, cheesemakers, chocolate makers, restaurateurs and chefs who are in the forefront of this movement in British Columbia. Throughout the book are recipes by top chefs using local B.C. ingredients.

The most specific subject heading available to bring out the recipes aspect of this work, Cookery, Canadian, is not authorized for geographic subdivision. SCM instruction sheet H 1475 “Cooking and Cookbooks” explains that headings for national and ethnic styles of cooking are not subdivided geographically. Instead, to express a regional style, catalogers are instructed to establish a heading for the national style of cooking subdivided with a topical subdivision for that regional style, for example, Cookery, American--Louisiana style.

SACO proposal: Cookery, Canadian--British Columbia style

Although the cataloger found that the National Library of Canada (now Library and Archives Canada) had assigned the proposed heading to this work in its online catalog, in order for the heading to be valid in LCSH, it had to be proposed through SACO.

The 008/06 in the proposed heading is coded “No Decision.” It is not clear if the heading falls under the types of headings covered in SCM H 364 sections 1 and 2. H 364 also says that in case of doubt about whether to authorize a heading for geographic subdivision, code it as “No Decision.” A check of existing headings for other styles of cookery (e.g., Cookery, American--Pacific Northwest style; Cookery, Chinese--Sichuan style) would show that they are all coded “No Decision.”

008/06 No Decision

150 $a Cookery, Canadian $x British Columbia style
450 $a British Columbia style of Canadian cookery
670 $a Work cat.: Barbolet, H. Farm folk, city folk: stories, tips, and recipes celebrating local food for food lovers of all stripes, c1998 $b (NLC subject found in ResAnet: Cookery, Canadian--British Columbia style)
952 $a LC pattern: Cookery, American--California style
Example AA

Title of work being cataloged: *Wetlands centre study*.

The title is not particularly explanatory of the subject of this work, but the work is about centers in Victoria, Australia, that interpret wetlands to the public. Searching LCSH reveals that there is a general heading, **Interpretation of cultural and natural resources**, and several more specific headings, such as **Historic sites--Interpretive programs**, **National parks and reserves--Interpretive programs**, and **Natural areas--Interpretive programs**. A search of the free-floating subdivisions listed in the SCM (or in *Free-floating Subdivisions: An Alphabetical Index*) shows that **Interpretive programs** is not free-floating. Therefore, if it is to be used in combination with a main heading other than the ones already established in LCSH, a SACO proposal must be made for it. Further authority research identifies the phrases "wetland interpretation" and "wetlands interpretation" in the titles of other works. Since LCSH has already established a pattern for interpretive programs, these phrases are proposed as cross-references.

**SACO proposal: Wetlands--Interpretive programs**

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 section 1 that say that when establishing main heading-subdivision combinations formulated with a subdivision that is normally authorized for further subdivision by place, code the extended heading for geographic subdivision. The topic covered by the main heading-subdivision combination can be discussed in relation to a place and other established headings that include the subdivision **Interpretive programs** (e.g., **Historic sites--Interpretive programs**) are authorized to be subdivided geographically.

008/06 May Subd Geog

150 $a Wetlands $x Interpretive programs
450 $a Wetland interpretation
450 $a Wetlands interpretation
550 $w g $a Interpretation of cultural and natural resources
670 $a Work cat.: Beckmann, E.A. *Wetlands centre study*, c1993: $b p. ii ("Centres dedicated to interpreting wetlands are rare in Australia. Nevertheless, there are several education/interpretation centres in Victoria which have a significant wetlands focus ...")
670 $a OCLC, Feb. 6, 2001 $b (wetland interpretation; wetlands interpretation)
952 $a LC pattern: Natural areas--Interpretive programs

Note: Although the topical subdivision **Interpretive programs** could potentially be needed under any kind of cultural or natural resource heading like the ones above, it is not possible to establish it as a free-floating subdivision because its use would still be very narrow. Headings for cultural or natural resources do not fit any of the five types of free-floating subdivisions described in SCM H 1095. Each time the subdivision
New Subject Proposal Examples

--Interpretive programs is needed under a new subject, it must be established editorially.
Establishing a free-floating subdivision under a pattern heading

Example BB

Title of work being cataloged: *Balsam woolly aphid predators native to Oregon and Washington.*

This work is about natural predators of an insect pest known as the balsam woolly adelgid. A search of LCSH shows that a heading already exists for this insect: **Balsam woolly adelgid**. The concept of predators is covered by the headings **Predatory animals** and **Predation (Biology)**. Although a cataloger might simply assign the heading for the insect and **Predatory animals** and/or **Predation (Biology)** (all of which could be subdivided geographically for the locations in question), this would still be somewhat broad and ambiguous, because neither the title of the work nor the assigned group of headings makes it clear whether the balsam woolly adelgid is the predator or the prey. What is really needed is a way to indicate clearly that the work really isn't about the insect *per se* but about the animals that eat it. Since the work does not focus on one specific group of predators, the best concept that one can come up with to describe this work is “predators of the balsam woolly adelgid.” One way to formulate this concept in LCSH would be to use a phrase heading: **Predators of balsam woolly adelgid**. Another way would be to use a combination of main heading plus topical subdivision: **Balsam woolly adelgid--Predators of**. The benefit of using the latter type of heading rather than the former is that if **--Predators of** were free-floating it could be used under any animal. Using the phrase form of heading would mean that a separate heading would have to be established every time it was needed, e.g., **Predators of mice, Predators of fishes**, etc.

Authority research identifies numerous other works that are about the predators of an animal but in which the specific predators are not described. The existence of other works like this provides support for choosing the free-floating route rather than separate phrase headings. The pattern headings for free-floating subdivisions under animals (SCM H 1147) are the headings **Fishes** and **Cattle**. In order to make the subdivision **--Predators of** free-floating, a proposal must be made to establish it in combination with one of the pattern headings. Since this particular subdivision is appropriate in general to all animals rather than to just domestic animals, **Fishes** is chosen as the pattern in the SACO proposal.

SACO proposal: **Fishes--Predators of**

According to SCM H 860, new subdivisions for which geographic orientation is logical are established with authorization for further subdivision by place.

008/06 May Subd Geog

150 $a Fishes $x Predators of
450 $a Predators of fishes
670 $a Work cat.: Mitchell, R.G. Balsam woolly aphid predators native to Oregon and
New Subject Proposal Examples

Washington, 1962: $b p. 3 (native predators affecting the balsam woolly aphid)

670 $a LC database, Mar. 17, 2000 $b (ti: predators of Adelges spp.; predators and anti-predator behaviour of the black-headed gull)
670 $a OCLC, Mar. 17, 2000 $b (ti: nature's predators on fish farms; native predators of the hemlock woolly adelgid; honey bee pests, predators, and diseases; tadpoles and predators; mite pests and their predators; predators of the common duiker; predators of the Douglas-fir beetle; predators of the gypsy moth; predators of the spruce budworm)

Once Fishes--Predators of is approved, --Predators of can be used under any other heading governed by the pattern. Thus for the work being cataloged listed above, the heading Balsam woolly adelgid--Predators of can be assigned even though there is no authority record specifically authorizing it.

As part of the process of establishing this new free-floating subdivision, the existing see also reference (MARC 21 authority field 360) on Predatory animals needs to be expanded. The SACO library should propose this change along with its free-floating proposal.

Existing see also reference:

150 $a Predatory animals
360 $i individual predatory animals and groups of predatory animals, e.g. $a Coyote; Eagles

Proposed revised see also reference:

150 $a Predatory animals
360 $i individual predatory animals and groups of predatory animals, e.g. $a Coyote; Eagles; $i and subdivision $a Predators of $i under individual animals and groups of animals, e.g. $a Fishes--Predators of

For another example illustrating the establishment of a free-floating subdivision, see the example Harvard University--Professional staff in the corporate name section of Appendix A (p. 255).
Summary of LC Subject Heading Editorial Process

SACO Participant

- **Recognizes** that an item is about a subject that is not yet adequately represented in LCSH
- **Searches** both the subject and name authority files to make sure that the subject is not already covered by existing headings or references
- **Checks** *Free-Floating Subdivisions or Subject Cataloging Manual* to verify that the topic is not covered by an existing heading--free-floating subdivision combination; checks H 405 for named entities
- **Searches** bibliographic files to see subject headings assigned to similar works
- **Verifies** the concept in reference sources (670, 675)
- **Decides** form of heading and correct MARC tagging (1XX)
- **Determines** the reference structure by consulting sources and *LCSH* (4XX, 5XX)
- If the contributor is a new SACO participant, **contacts** a SACO mentor to have the mentor review the proposal and provide them with feedback
- **Completes** the Web subject authority proposal form and submits it online
- If the contributor is a new SACO participant, **notifies** the SACO mentor that they have submitted the proposal using the Web form, so that the mentor can review it online in the LC Authorities website

SACO Mentor

- **Reviews** submitted proposal for validity and for sufficient authority research
- **Functions** as a liaison between the submitting institution and the SACO staff within LC’s Cooperative Cataloging Team
- **If proposal is deemed ready for LC review, notifies** the Cooperative Cataloging Team that it can be processed without any editing (or with minor editing) and that bibliographic file maintenance can be performed

Cooperative Cataloging Team

- **Downloads** proposals submitted on the Web form for inclusion in the Web OPAC’s online LC authorities database
- **Reviews** proposal for validity and for sufficient authority research unless it has already been reviewed by a SACO mentor
- **Searches** LC database for bibliographic file maintenance
- **Notifies** submitting library of any changes needed to the form of heading
- **Forwards** printout of proposal to the Cataloging Policy and Support Office (CPSO). At this point, the proposal may be assigned as a subject heading on a bibliographic record with the understanding that it may be changed at the Editorial Meeting.
Editorial Process Summary

Subject Heading Editorial Team (SHed)

- **Searches** proposed heading and references to ensure that heading is not a duplicate, that UF's are not existing headings, and that proposed BTs and RTs are valid or proposed headings; also checks pattern headings for appropriateness of references
- **Inputs** proposals into the LC system, if they have not already been input in Coop. Cat. SHed staff complete the fixed fields of the authority record and create authority records for backdoor headings for which records or proposals do not already exist.
- **Copies** other records requiring changes because of proposals; adds forced filing fields to group related headings together on weekly list
- **Prepares** tentative weekly list of proposals for circulation within LC and posting to the LC intranet. Headings shown on the weekly lists have the LCCN prefix sp, indicating that they are in the proposal stage. Once available, the tentative weekly lists are posted to the SACO Web site (http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/tentative/twls.html) by the Coop Team.

Cataloging Policy Specialist

- **Reviews** and investigates proposals on weekly list, checking for adherence to policy for formulation of headings and references and for adequate support in cited sources
- **Gathers** comments from LC catalogers and maintains overall viewpoint of LCSH

Editorial Meeting

- **Held** every Wednesday morning
- **Communication** of changes to proposals
- **Discussion** of policy issues raised by individual proposals

After the Editorial Meeting

- **Cataloging policy specialist** returns any proposals needing more work; prepares the Summary of Decisions for email distribution within LC and over SACOLIST and for inclusion on the approved weekly list
- **Summary of Decisions** is posted to the SACO home page (http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/cpsoed/cpsoeditorial.html) by the Coop Team
- **SHed Team** inputs changes and validates authority records; posts alphabetically arranged approved weekly list to the Cataloging and Acquisitions home page (http://www.loc.gov/aba/), including the Summary of Decisions of the editorial meeting
- **Cooperative cataloging liaison** informs the SACO participant of any changes in the 1XX which were made at the Editorial Meeting. Changes in reference hierarchy or 670 citations are not communicated to the SACO participant; it is incumbent on each SACO participant to search the authority record or review the published weekly lists for any of these other changes.
• **Cataloging Distribution Service (CDS)** distributes approved authority records in weekly tape distribution to subscribers, utilities, vendors, etc. LCSH in *Classification Web* is updated with new headings and heading changes.
Sample Pages from Tentative Weekly List
SACO participants should contact their SACO liaison on the Cooperative Cataloging Team with comments/questions.

Changes to existing headings are indicated by an asterisk. (A) indicates proposals that were approved before the editorial meeting. (C) indicates proposals submitted by cooperating libraries.

**Note: Diacritics and special characters are not displayed in this list.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Subject Headings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(C)</td>
<td>Agriculture--Forecasting</td>
<td>[sp 85002435]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UF Agricultural forecasting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C)</td>
<td>Airplanes--Models</td>
<td>[May Subd Geog] [sp 85002841]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UF Aircraft, Model</td>
<td>450</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UF Model aircraft</td>
<td>450</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C)</td>
<td>Appleyard family (Fictitious characters)</td>
<td>[Not Subd Geog] [sp 00001902]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C)</td>
<td>Byfield family (Fictitious characters)</td>
<td>[Not Subd Geog] [sp 00001901]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A)</td>
<td>Arakelov theory</td>
<td>[sp 00000203]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>QA242.6</td>
<td>053</td>
<td>450 Arakelov geometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BT Arithmetical algebraic geometry</td>
<td>550</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A)</td>
<td>Capacity theory (Mathematics)</td>
<td>[sp 00000204]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UF Capacity of a set</td>
<td>450</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BT Pluripotential theory</td>
<td>550</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C)</td>
<td>Arkansas River shiner</td>
<td>[May Subd Geog] [sp 00001930]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>QL638.C94 (Zoology)</td>
<td>053</td>
<td>450 Notropis girardi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BT Notropis</td>
<td>550</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BattleTanx Global Assault (Game)</td>
<td>[sp 00002073]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GV1469.35.B36</td>
<td>053</td>
<td>550 Video games</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C)</td>
<td>Bethesda, Pool of</td>
<td>[sp 00001906]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.</td>
<td>667</td>
<td>451 UF Pool of Bethesda (Jerusalem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>451 UF Sheep Pool (Jerusalem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>550 BT Ponds--Jerusalem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C)</td>
<td>Ponds--Jerusalem</td>
<td>[sp 00001904]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Bible--History of Biblical events--Art
Bible--Art
Bois-Francs (Quebec)
Book donations
Donations of books
Libraries--Gifts, legacies
Bradley, Helen (Fictitious character)
Brock, David (Fictitious character)
Brock, Detective Chief Inspector (Fictitious character)
Brock, (Fictitious character)
Brock, DCI (Fictitious character)
Brock, Detective Chief Inspector (Fictitious character)
Canada--Civilization--Italian influences
Italy--Civilization
Carbuncle Pond (R.I.)
Lakes--Rhode Island
Cartographic materials
Cataloging of cartographic materials
Globes
Maps
Remote-sensing images
Chain Gate (Jerusalem)
Bab al-silsila (Jerusalem)
Bab al-silsila--Jerusalem
Chateau de Boussu (Boussu, Belgium)
Boussu Castle (Boussu, Belgium)
Boussu Castle--Belgium
Kasteel van Boussu (Boussu, Belgium)
Castle of Boussu--Belgium
Chain Gate--Belgium
Bab al-silsila--Jerusalem
Boussu Castle--Belgium
Boussu Castle--Belgium
Kasteel van Boussu--Belgium
Remote-sensing images--Belgium
Coal Creek Park (Wash.)
Coal Creek Canyon Park (Wash.)
Sample Pages from Approved Weekly List
Changes to existing headings are indicated by an asterisk. (A) indicates proposals that were approved before the editorial meeting. (C) indicates proposals submitted by cooperating libraries.

150 Agriculture--Forecasting [sp 85002435]
* 450 UF Agricultural forecasting

150 Airplanes--Models [May Subd Geog] [sp 85002841]
* 053 TL770-TL777 CANCEL
* 053 TL770-TL778
* 450 UF Aircraft, Model
* 450 UF Model aircraft

(C) 150 Appleyard family (Fictitious characters) [Not Subd Geog] [sp 00001902]

(A) 150 Arakelov theory [sp 00000203]
053 QA242.6
450 UF Arakelov geometry
550 BT Arithmetical algebraic geometry
150 Arches--Jerusalem [sp 00002697]

(C) 150 Arkansas River shiner [May Subd Geog] [sp 00001930]
053 QL638.C94 (Zoology)
450 UF Notropis girardi
550 BT Notropis
150 BattleTanx Global Assault (Game) [sp 00002073]
053 GV1469.35.B36
550 BT Video games

100 Bennett family [Not Subd Geog] [sp 85013199]
* 500 RT Curtis-Bennett family

(C) 151 Bethesda, Pool of (Jerusalem) [sp 00001906]
667 This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
451 UF Pool of Bethesda (Jerusalem)
451 UF Sheep Pool (Jerusalem)
550 BT Ponds--Jerusalem

130 Bible--History of Biblical events--Art [sp 00003108]
430 UF Bible--Art

151 Big Smoky Valley (Nev.) [sp 00001412]
451 UF Big Smokey Valley (Nev.)
451 UF Great Smoky Valley (Nev.)
451 UF Smokey Valley (Nev.)
451 UF Smoky Valley (Nev.)
451 UF Wen-A-No-Nu-Fee Valley (Nev.)
451 UF Won-A-No-Nu-Fee Valley (Nev.)
550 BT Valleys--Nevada
151  Bois-Francs (Quebec)  [sp 00002852]

(C)  150  Book donations  [May Subd Geog]  [sp 00001925]
450    UF Book donation
450    UF Donation of books
550    BT Gifts
550    BT Libraries--Gifts, legacies

(A)  150  Bradley, Helen (Fictitious character)  [Not Subd Geog]  [sp 00001236]
450    UF Helen Bradley (Fictitious character)

(C)  150  Brock, David (Fictitious character)  [Not Subd Geog]  [sp 00001972]
450    UF David Brock (Fictitious character)
450    UF DCI Brock (Fictitious character)
450    UF Detective Chief Inspector Brock (Fictitious character)

(C)  150  Byfield family (Fictitious characters)  [Not Subd Geog]  [sp 00001901]
151    Canada--Civilization--Italian influences  [sp 00001119]
551    BT Italy--Civilization

(A)  150  Capacity theory (Mathematics)  [sp 00000204]
450    UF Capacity of a set
550    BT Pluripotential theory

(C)  151  Carbuncle Pond (R.I.)  [sp 00001937]
550    BT Ponds--Rhode Island

(C)  150  Cartographic materials  [May Subd Geog]  [sp 00003498]
550    BT Nonbook materials

(C)  150  Cataloging of cartographic materials  [May Subd Geog]  [sp 00003497]
053       Z695.6
550    BT Cartographic materials

(C)  150  Chain Gate (Jerusalem)  [sp 00001890]
450    UF Bab al-Silsila (Jerusalem)
450    UF Sha ar ha-Shalshelet (Jerusalem)
550    BT Gates--Jerusalem

(C)  110  Chateau de Boussu (Boussu, Belgium)  [sp 00000241]
410    UF Boussu Castle (Boussu, Belgium)
410    UF Kasteel van Boussu (Boussu, Belgium)
550    BT Castles--Belgium
110    Ch u chia ta yuan (Qi Xian, Shanxi Sheng, China)  [sp 00001502]
410    UF Ch u Family Courtyard (Qi Xian, Shanxi Sheng, China)
550    BT Courtyards--China

(C)  151  Coal Creek Park (Wash.)  [sp 00003495]
451    UF Coal Creek Canyon Park (Wash.)
550    BT Parks--Washington (State)
150    Communal living  [May Subd Geog]  [sp 85029011]
*  450    UF Counter culture  CANCEL

(C)  150  Computer adaptive testing  [May Subd Geog]  [sp 95006191]
*  450    UF Adaptive testing, Computer
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

In order to create SACO proposals for subject headings catalogers must know the fundamentals of the MARC 21 authority format as it pertains to subjects. SACO subject heading proposals should be submitted with explicit MARC coding for most parts of the proposal. Detailed explanations of all MARC fields and values may be found in the *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data* published by the Library of Congress Cataloging Distribution Service.

Sample OCLC Authority Record

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARN</th>
<th>5175526</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rec stat</td>
<td>c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entered</td>
<td>20040709</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replaced</td>
<td>20040819081237.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upd status</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enc lvl</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source</td>
<td>c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ref status</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mod rec</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name use</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govt agn</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auth status</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subj</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subj use</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Series</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auth/Ref</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geo subd</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ser use</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ser num</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subdiv tp</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rules</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>010</td>
<td>sh 00002585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>040</td>
<td>PHC +b eng +c DLC +d WaU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>Hindu diaspora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>360</td>
<td>+t headings of the type +t Hindu--[place]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
<td>Diaspora, Hindu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
<td>Hindus +t Diaspora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
<td>East Indian diaspora +w g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
<td>Human geography +w g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
<td>Hindus +t Migrations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>680</td>
<td>+t Here are entered works on the dispersion of Hindu people beyond India.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sample RLIN21 Authority Record

```
ID:sh 00002586   Earlier Version
VST:2004-08-19 ST:p MS:c EL:n
001     sh 00002586
005     20040819081237.0
008     040709-?:anannbahn--------?a ana-----c
010     ‡aash 00002586
040     ‡aPHC‡beng‡cDLC‡dWaU
150     ‡aHindu diaspora
360     ‡theadings of the type‡aHindus: [place]
450     ‡aDiaspora, Hindu
450     ‡aHindus‡xDiaspora
550     ‡wg‡aEast Indian diaspora
550     ‡wg‡aHuman geography
550     ‡wg‡aMigrations
680     ‡fHere are entered works on the dispersion of Hindu people beyond India.
```

An expanded display of field 008 in this RLIN21 record is shown on the following page.
### Authority 008 Display for sh 00002585

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(00-05) Date entered on file</td>
<td></td>
<td>2004-07-09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(06) Direct or indirect geographic subdivision</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Not subdivided geographically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(07) Romanization scheme</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>No attempt to code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(08) Language of catalog</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>No information provided</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(09) Kind of record</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Established heading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10) Descriptive cataloging rules</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(11) Subject heading system/thesaurus</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Library of Congress Subject Headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(12) Type of series</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(13) Numbered or unnumbered series</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(14) Heading use-main or added entry</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Not appropriate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(15) Heading use-subject added entry</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Appropriate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(16) Heading use-series added entry</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Not appropriate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(17) Type of subject subdivision</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(28) Type of government agency</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>No attempt to code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(29) Reference evaluation</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Tracings are consistent with the heading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(31) Record update in process</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Record can be used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(32) Undifferentiated personal name</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(33) Level of establishment</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Fully established</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(38) Modified record</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Not modified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(39) Cataloging source</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>Cooperative cataloging program</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Fixed Fields**

LC staff will supply most fixed field values in subject authorities. The one fixed field that must be included in all SACO proposals is field 008/06. Other important fixed fields for subject authorities are also described below.

**008/06: Direct or Indirect Geographic Subdivision**

SACO proposals should specify the value of fixed field 008/06. This field is labeled **Geo subd:** in OCLC.

The four values used by LC in fixed field 008/06 in subject authorities are i, # (blank), | (fill character), and n:

- **i** Subdivided geographically--indirect
- **#** Not subdivided geographically
- **|** No decision
- **n** Not applicable

A blank value appears in RLIN21 as a small hyphen (-). In OCLC displays, the field is truly blank.

The fill character in RLIN21 is a question mark. In OCLC the fill character appears as a square black box: ■

SCM H 364 provides additional information on how to code fixed field 008/06 and describes LC's policy on when to use each of the values listed above. The default value is no decision. Catalogers should be familiar with LC policy and indicate the proper value to be used in their proposals.
**MARC Authority Format for Subjects**

**008/09: Kind of Record**

This field is labeled **Auth/ref:** in OCLC.

The values found in this field include:

a  Established heading record

Authority records with value a in 008/09 are records in which field 100-155 contains an established (i.e., authorized) heading.

b or c  Reference record

Authority records with values b or c in 008/09 are records in which field 100-155 contains an **unestablished** (i.e., unauthorized) heading. Reference records for subjects also contain a general see reference in field 260. Field 260 contains the explanatory text for the see reference and the established headings referred to. See SCM H 374 for additional information on reference records and general see references.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rec stat</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Roman</th>
<th>Govt agn</th>
<th>Series</th>
<th>Ser num</th>
<th>Auth/ref</th>
<th>Entered</th>
<th>19870129</th>
<th>Replaced</th>
<th>20000228110135:0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>z</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>z</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the example above, **Aerial exploration** is not valid for use as a topical subject heading, but it is valid for use as a topical subdivision.
d  Subdivision record

Authority records with value d in 008/09 are records in which the 18X field contains the authorized form of a general, chronological, genre/form term, or a geographic name that may be used only as a subject subdivision portion of an established heading.
**MARC Authority Format for Subjects**

**008/11: Subject Heading System/Thesaurus**

This field is labeled **Subj** in OCLC.

a  LCSH

b  AC (children's literature) subject heading
**008/29: Reference Evaluation**

This field contains a code indicating whether the 4XX/5XX fields (references) in an authority record have been evaluated for their consistency with the rules used to formulate the 1XX heading in the record. The field is labeled **Ref status:** in OCLC.

- **a** references evaluated: consistent with policy
- **b** references unevaluated: may or may not be consistent with policy
- **n** not applicable, no references

A subject authority with value **a** is potentially useful as a pattern to follow for the reference structure of an analogous heading that is being proposed. Subject authority records with value **b** are evaluated and recoded on a case-by-case basis. LC will recode records from **b** to **a** if references are revised to reflect current subject cataloging policy. Value **n** is valid in records for subject headings with no references, such as family names with no variants, named geographic regions with no variants, and many backdoor headings (see glossary). Older subject headings in LCSH may lack appropriate references and are reviewed and upgraded on a case-by-case basis.

Examples of subject authority with unevaluated references:
Example of subject authority with no references (family name with no variants):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rec stat</th>
<th>Entered</th>
<th>Replaced</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Upd status</th>
<th>Enc M</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20081019</td>
<td>20081019</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref status</th>
<th>Mod rec</th>
<th>Name use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Govt agn</th>
<th>Auth status</th>
<th>Subj</th>
<th>Subj use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Series</th>
<th>Auth/ref</th>
<th>Geo subd</th>
<th>Ser use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ser num</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Subdiv tp</th>
<th>Rules</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td></td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: sh 85055818

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>010</th>
<th>sh 85055818</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

DLC #b eng #c DLC

150 Golfers

550 Golf #w g
Example of older subject authority lacking appropriate references (an insect species lacking a used for (field 450) reference from the scientific name and a broader term reference (field 550) from the next highest taxonomic level (genus)):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARN</th>
<th>2153271</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rec stat</td>
<td>c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govt agn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Series</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ser num</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

010  | sh 85129149 |
040  | DLC #b eng #f DLC #d DLC |
053  | SB 808.P3 |
150  | Striped peach-worm |

Example of backdoor heading with no references:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARN</th>
<th>7297420</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rec stat</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govt agn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Series</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ser num</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

010  | sh 2006008386 |
040  | UPB #b eng #f DLC |
150  | Canalis #fz Argentina |
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

008/33: Level of Establishment

This field is labeled Auth status: in OCLC.

- **a** fully established
- **c** provisional

Value **a** is the default. Value **c** is used in situations in which, because of lack of information, the heading cannot be established in the language called for in the SCM:SH guidelines (see H 1334 for buildings and other structures, H 1925 for parks).

Example of provisional subject heading:

- **Pinin National Park (Bulgaria)**
- **Vikhren National Park (Bulgaria)**
- **National parks and reserves in Bulgaria**
- **UNESCO World Heritage sites homepage, July 18, 1999; h: (Pinin National Park 41°40' N 22°59' E; est. 1893 Vikhren National Park, enlarged and renamed Pinin National Park in 1976).**

Level of Establishment is coded “c” for provisional because the Bulgarian name of this national park was not available at the time this heading was established.

If a SACO library subsequently finds pertinent information about a specific heading that was established provisionally, the library may submit a change proposal to revise the form of heading to match the form called for in the SCM guidelines, and LC will then recode the value in 008/33 to show that the heading is now fully established.
**008/39: Cataloging Source**

This field contains a code indicating the creator of an authority record. It is labeled **Source:** in OCLC.

# (blank) LC  
c Cooperative cataloging program (SACO) participant

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARN</th>
<th>7297195</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govt agn</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Series</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ser num</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source</td>
<td>c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>010</th>
<th>sh2006007644</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>040</td>
<td>MoSR #b eng #c DLC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>Fashion and architecture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
<td>Architecture and fashion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
<td>Architecture #w g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>670</td>
<td>Work cat.: Skin + bones ; parallel practices in fashion and architecture, 2006.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

Variable Fields

010: Library of Congress Control Number (LCCN)

This field contains a unique identifier assigned to a subject authority record by the Library of Congress. Both indicator positions are undefined and contain a blank. Subfield $a contains a valid LCCN. Subfield $z is used for canceled or invalid LCCNs (e.g., when an authority record is canceled because it is covered by another existing authority, the LCCN of the canceled record is included in the 010 subfield $z of the record that is retained).

LCCNs consist of an alphanumeric prefix followed by a unique number. Established subject authority records have a prefix beginning with sh (LCSH) or sj (Annotated Card (juvenile) subject headings). LCCNs of subject authority proposals shown on tentative and approved weekly lists have the prefix sp.

Records for subject headings in existence before November 1985 have the prefix sh 85 and records for headings created December 1985 to December 1986 begin with the prefix sh 86. Records created since 1987 have the year of creation in the prefix (e.g., sh 87 for 1987 and sh 00 for 2000); in 2001, the form of year in the prefix changed from two digits to four (e.g., sh2001).

The Library of Congress will assign an LCCN to each proposed new subject authority submitted by SACO participants. Subject heading change proposals must include the LCCN of the record being changed in the 010 line on the change proposal form.

Examples:

010 $a sh 93006958

010 $a sh 00003802

010 $a sh2001004461

010 $a sh 86002596 $z sh 85049597
019: Library of Congress Control Number (LCCN) - Local Field

This is a locally defined field used for processing subject heading proposals. After a Coop Team member reviews/revises a proposal and determines that it is ready to be reported to CPSO for inclusion on a weekly list, he or she adds an 019 field to the record with the same record control number as in the 010 field and the prefix sp. The presence of the 019 field causes that record to load overnight into the LCSH Master Database. When the SHed team receives a printout of the proposal from Coop, they process it for a weekly list. After the editorial meeting when a subject heading has been approved, the 019 field and the legend “[proposed]” or “[proposed update]” at the end of the 1XX field are deleted from the record, and it is distributed to Classification Web, OCLC, and other subject authority record subscribers.

Example of a subject proposal in the Library of Congress Authorities website that has been reviewed by Coop and sent to CPSO for inclusion on a weekly list (note the presence of an 019 field in the record):

```
LC Control Number: sh2008020286
HEADING: Soils Silver content [proposed]
000 00789cz a2200181n 450
001 7062448
005 20081221000853.0
008 0612211 l anantr:abn |a rna c
906 _l |a **** |u **** |v 0
010 _l |a sh2008020286
019 _l |a sp2008020286
040 _l |a WaU |b eng |c DLC
150 _l |a Soils |x Silver content [proposed]
550 _l |w g |a Silver
952 _l |a 0 bib, record(s) to be changed
952 _l |a LC pattern: Soils--Aluminum content; Soils--Copper content
953 _l |a y200
```
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

Example of a subject proposal in the Library of Congress Authorities website that has not yet been reviewed by Coop and sent to CPSO (note the lack of an 019 field in the record):

**LC Control Number:** sh2007000582

**HEADING:** Olympic Sculpture Park (Seattle, Wash.) [proposed]

000 012023z a2200024I n 450.
001 7081599
005 20070130094831.0
008 070130|| ananbabc |arrrc
900 _a **** |u **** |v 0
010 _a sh2007000582
040 _a WaU |b eng |c DLC
151 _a Olympic Sculpture Park (Seattle, Wash.) [proposed]
451 _a SAM Olympic Sculpture Park (Seattle, Wash.)
451 _a Seattle Art Museum Olympic Sculpture Park (Seattle, Wash.)
550 _w g |a Sculpture parks |z Washington (State)
667 _a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
670 _a Work cat: Seattle Art Museum Olympic Sculpture Park map & guide, 2006 or 2007; |b title panel (SAM Olympic Sculpture Park) map recto (Olympic Sculpture Park)
670 _a Time, Jan. 29, 2007; |b p. 125 (Seattle's new Olympic Sculpture Park)
670 _a Seattle Art Museum home page, Jan. 28, 2007 |b (Olympic Sculpture Park)
952 __a 0 bib. record(s) to be changed
952 __a LC pattern
953 __a y200
040: Cataloging Source

Each library submitting a subject proposal must have a MARC organization code (see the Introduction for further information). MARC organization codes are not the same as the codes assigned to libraries in utilities such as OCLC. The MARC code is given in 040 subfield $a of new subject headings, which identifies the institution creating the subject heading. Subfield $b (language of cataloging, i.e., the language used in notes and note fields) will have the value eng for English. Subfield $c (transcribing agency) will have the value DLC for the Library of Congress. For change proposals, the library's MARC organization code will be added at the end of the 040 in subfield $d (modifying agency). Both indicator positions in field 040 are undefined and contain a blank.

Examples:

040 $a CaAE $b eng $c DLC
Heading created by Edmonton Public Library

040 $a DLC $b eng $c DLC $d LiViLN
Heading created by LC, later modified by Martynas Maˇvydas National Library of Lithuania

040 $a CSfA $b eng $c DLC $d WaU
Heading created by California Academy of Sciences, later modified by University of Washington

040 $a OCl $b eng $c DLC $d DLC $d FU
Heading created by Cleveland Public Library, later modified by LC, and most recently modified by University of Florida
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

053: LC Classification Number

This field may hold a single classification number or may indicate a span of numbers appropriate to a subject heading. The field is repeatable; if two or more separate numbers or spans of numbers are pertinent to a heading, they can be included in different 053 fields. Multiple 053 fields are arranged by class number alphabetically and numerically.

The first indicator is blank. The second indicator will have value 0 (assigned by LC). A single number or the beginning number of a span is given in subfield $a$. The ending number of the span is given in subfield $b$. Subfield $c$ is used to provide a qualifier that explains what aspect of the topic that classification number or span represents. SCM H 365 provides further details on when to assign and when not to assign a number or span of numbers to a heading, when to include qualifiers, and when to assign multiple 053 fields. If multiple 053s are present, each of them must include an appropriate qualifier in subfield $c$.

SACO libraries that do not use LC Classification do not need to be concerned with the 053 field. On subject heading proposals from non-LCC libraries, Coop. Cat. or CPSO staff will provide 053 data if it is appropriate.

Examples:

053 0 $a DS632.D68
150  $a Dou Donggo (Indonesian people)

053 0 $a KZ6440 $b KZ6530
150  $a Humanitarian law

053 0 $a QL737.M35 $c Zoology
053 0 $a SF408.6.K35 $c Zoo animals
150  $a Kangaroos

053 0 $a QH91.8.B6 $c General
053 0 $a QH92 $b QH95.59 $c Local, by body of water
053 0 $a QH101 $b QH198 $c Local, by region, etc.
150  $a Marine biodiversity

053 0 $a HG289 $c Finance
053 0 $a HG551 $c Coinage
053 0 $a QD181.A9 $c Chemistry
053 0 $a QE391.G6 $c Mineralogy
053 0 $a TP245.G6 $c Chemical technology
150  $a Gold
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

1XX: Headings

In an established heading record (see 008/09), the 1XX field contains the heading selected for use as the authorized LCSH term. The following tags are authorized in MARC 21:

100  Heading--Personal Name
110  Heading--Corporate Name
111  Heading--Meeting Name
130  Heading--Uniform Title
148  Heading--Chronological Term
150  Heading--Topical Term
151  Heading--Geographic Name
155  Heading--Genre/Form Term

In a subdivision authority record, the 1XX contains the heading selected for use as the authorized subject subdivision. The following tags for subject subdivisions are authorized in MARC 21:

180  Heading--General Subdivision
181  Heading--Geographic Subdivision
182  Heading--Chronological Subdivision
185  Heading--Form Subdivision

LC does not yet use fields 148 and 155. Chronological and genre/form main headings presently are coded 150. Subdivision authority records (180, 182, 185) are created at LC based on proposals to authorize new free-floating subdivisions. Subdivision authority records for geographic headings (181) are not routinely created because subdivision usage information is added to 781 fields in authority records for geographic places tagged 151 instead. SACO proposals are therefore currently limited to headings coded 100, 110, 111, 130, 150, and 151.

Follow MARC 21 authority standards for indicators and subfield codes (see below under each field for further information on valid indicators).

Libraries must be familiar with LC policy on whether certain problematic named entities are established as name headings through NACO or as subjects through SACO. This policy is known colloquially as the "division of the world" and is explained in detail in SCM H 405. There are two groups of headings listed in SCM H 405: group one consists of entities whose headings are always established in the name authority file according to AACR2 and LCRI, and group two consists of headings always established according to subject cataloging conventions with authority records that reside in either the name or subject authority file depending on whether the heading is needed as a descriptive access point in a bibliographic record. A tabular consolidation of both groups of headings is available on the SACO home page as “An Alphabetic List of Ambiguous Entities” at http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/alpha405.html.
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

SCM H 405 also describes procedures to follow when an established subject for a named entity should be moved from the subject authority file and reestablished in the name authority file.

Subject heading proposals can be identified in the Library of Congress Authorities Web database by the presence of legends at the end of the 1XX field. New subject proposals will have the legend “[proposed]” and change proposals will have the legend “[proposed update].”

Proposal for new heading Sea bird chicks viewed in the LC Authorities website:

![Library of Congress Authorities](image)

**SOURCE OF HEADINGS:** Library of Congress Online Catalog

**YOU SEARCHED:** Subject Authority Headings = Sea bird

**SEARCH RESULTS:** Displaying 1 through 25 of 25.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#</th>
<th>Bib Records</th>
<th>select icon in first column to...</th>
<th>Type of Heading</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>View Authority Headings/References</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Sea bird chicks [proposed]</td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>Sea birds</td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Sea birds</td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sea birds Africa, Southern Bibliography.</td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Sea birds Alaska</td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sea birds Alaska</td>
<td>LC subject headings for children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sea birds Alaska Alaska, Gulf of Geographical distribution Maps.</td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sea birds Alaska Congresses</td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sea birds Alaska Cook Inlet</td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sea birds Alaska Effect of water pollution on.</td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Change proposal to the heading **Humorous stories** viewed in the LC Authorities website:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#</th>
<th>Bib Records</th>
<th>select icon in first column to...</th>
<th>Type of Heading</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>View Authority Headings/References</td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td>LC subject headings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Specific information on each of the 1XX tags used in SACO proposals follows below. The examples under each tag illustrate the variety of subject headings created by libraries worldwide and established through SACO.
**MARC Authority Format for Subjects**

**100: Personal Name**

The valid first indicator values are 0 (forename), 1 (surname), and 3 (family name). The second indicator is blank for 100.

Family names, royal houses, and dynasties are established as subject headings in LCSH and may be proposed through SACO. Names of individual persons are established by NACO libraries and are not included in LCSH. SACO libraries may not propose headings for individuals. However, proposals may be made to establish non-free-floating subdivisions under established personal names (see SCM H 1095, H 1110, and H 1120 and examples below). Subject authority records are also created for personal name/free-floating subdivision combinations that are needed as broader or related term references on proposed headings (see SCM H 200 sec. 8c), but such "backdoor headings" need not be proposed by SACO participants.

Examples:

```
100 3 $a Arsacid dynasty, $d 247 B.C.-224 A.D.
100 3 $a Arundel, Earls of
100 3 $a Dohna-Reichertswalde, Counts of
100 3 $a Eliseev family
100 3 $a Gediminas, House of
100 3 $a La Farge family
100 3 $a Lodi dynasty, $d 1451-1526
100 3 $a Mecklenburg, Dukes of
100 3 $a Umayyad dynasty
100 3 $a Ysenburg-Büdingen, House of
```

Examples of personal names with non-free-floating subdivisions:

```
100 0 $a Jesus Christ $x Black interpretations
100 1 $a Lincoln, Abraham, $d 1809-1865 $x Funeral journey to Springfield
100 1 $a McCartney, Paul $x Death hoax
100 0 $a Moses $c (Biblical leader) $x Islamic interpretations
100 0 $a Napoleon $b I, $c Emperor of the French, $d 1769-1821 $x Elba and the Hundred Days, 1814-1815
100 0 $a Paul, $c the Apostle, Saint $x Jewish interpretations
100 1 $a Presley, Elvis, $d 1935-1977 $x Sightings
```
**MARC Authority Format for Subjects**

**110: Corporate Name**

The valid first indicators are 1 (jurisdiction name) and 2 (name in direct order). The second indicator is blank.

Corporate bodies capable of authorship are established by NACO libraries and are not included in LCSH. SACO libraries may not propose headings for these types of corporate bodies. SCM H 405 includes lists of ambiguous entities that are established either as names or subjects. Because LC considers names of buildings and some other structures (e.g., racetracks; resorts) to be like corporate names, headings for them are established as subjects coded 110 and may be proposed via SACO.

SACO proposals may be made to establish non-free-floating subdivisions under established corporate names (see SCM H 1095 and H 1105 and examples below). Subject authority records are also created for corporate name/free-floating subdivision combinations that are needed as broader or related term references on proposed headings (see SCM H 200 sec. 8c), but such "backdoor headings" need not be proposed by SACO participants.

Examples:

110 2 $a 390 Fifth Avenue (New York, N.Y.)
110 2 $a Bess Meshulam Simon Music Library and Recital Center (Bloomington, Ind.)
110 2 $a Curragh Racecourse (Kildare, Ireland)
110 2 $a Daikokuya Jūtaku (Kaminoyama-shi, Japan)
110 2 $a Grady Gammage Memorial Auditorium (Tempe, Ariz.)
110 2 $a House of the Tragic Poet (Pompeii)
110 2 $a Huntington Castle (Huntington, Herefordshire, England)
110 2 $a Maricopa County Courthouse (Phoenix, Ariz. : Washington Street)
110 2 $a Nootka Lighthouse (Yuquot, B.C.)
110 2 $a Pavillon de la Norvège (Exposition internationale, 1937, Paris, France)
110 2 $a USA National Pavilion (Salon international de l'aéronautique et de l'espace, 39th, 1991, Paris, France)
110 2 $a Walt Disney World Resort (Fla.)

Examples of corporate names with non-free-floating subdivisions:

110 2 $a Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints $x Apostles
110 1 $a Great Britain. $b Parliament $x University representation
110 1 $a Iran. $b Safārat (Great Britain) $x Siege, 1980
110 2 $a Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development $x Economic assistance
110 2 $a Palacio Presidencial (Havana, Cuba) $x Siege, 1957
110 2 $a United Nations $x Peacekeeping forces
110 1 $a United States. $b Air Force $x Combat controllers
**111: Meeting Name**

The valid first indicator values are 1 (jurisdiction name) and 2 (name in direct order). The second indicator is blank.

Conference and meeting names and formal names of some kinds of events (e.g., competitions, contests, exhibitions, expeditions, fairs, festivals, parades, sporting events—see SCM H 1592 sec. 2 for a complete list) are established through NACO and may not be proposed via SACO. Headings for these types of events that were established in the subject authority file per provisions in force prior to August 1996 (see SCM H 1592 background and sec. 3) should be converted to name headings in the name authority file according to the procedures in LCRI 24.7 and 24.8 when these headings are needed in new cataloging. After establishing the name heading, a proposal should be submitted to delete the subject authority record. SACO participants that are not also NACO participants may contact CPSO or a NACO library to request the creation of the name authority record.

Events that generally cannot be repeated and have no formal names but are commonly referred to by generic terms, or acquire names after the fact (e.g., accidents, battles, bombings, natural disasters, strikes, trials—see SCM H 1592 sec. 1 for a complete list), are established as subject headings tagged 150.

SACO proposals may be made to establish non-free-floating subdivisions under established conference headings (see SCM H 1095 and H 1105 and examples below). Subject authority records are also created for conference name/free-floating subdivision combinations that are needed as broader or related term references on proposed headings (see SCM H 200 sec. 8c), but such "backdoor headings" need not be proposed by SACO participants.

Examples of meeting names with non-free-floating subdivisions:

```
111 2 $a America's Cup $x Records
111 2 $a Super Bowl $x Records
```

Examples of existing subject headings that should be converted to name headings tagged 111 when needed for new cataloging:

```
150 $a Australian Open Tennis Championships, Australia
110 2 $a Bonite Expedition, 1836-1837
150 $a Coca-Cola Cup (Soccer)
150 $a Golden Gloves Tournament
150 $a Great Circus Parade, Milwaukee, Wis.
150 $a Hatch Chile Festival, Hatch, N.M.
150 $a National Peace Essay Contest
150 $a Orange Bowl, Miami, Fla. (Football game)
150 $a Tour Du Pont (Bicycle race)
```
130: Uniform Title

The first indicator is blank and the second indicator should always be 0 (initial articles are always omitted in uniform titles).

Uniform titles are always established through NACO and may not be proposed through SACO. SACO proposals may be made to establish non-free-floating subdivisions under established uniform titles for literary and sacred works (see SCM H 1095, H 1155.8, H 1188, and examples below). Subject authority records are also created for uniform title/free-floating subdivision combinations that are needed as broader or related term references on proposed headings (see SCM H 200 sec. 8c), but such "backdoor headings" need not be proposed by SACO participants.

Examples of uniform title headings with non-free-floating subdivisions:

130 0 $a Bhagavadgītā $x Relation to the Bible
130 0 $a Book of Mormon $x Relation to the Bible
130 0 $a Bible $x In motion pictures
130 0 $a Bible $v Parodies, imitations, etc.
130 0 $a Bible. $p O.T. $p Isaiah $x Quotations in the Book of Mormon
130 0 $a Dead Sea scrolls $v Quotations
130 0 $a Dead Sea scrolls $x Relation to the New Testament
130 0 $a Koran $x History of Koranic events
130 0 $a Tripi©aka $x Copying
130 0 $a Vedas $x Historicity
130 0 $a Vedas. $p ♠gveda $x Recitation
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

150: Topical Term

No indicators are used in headings coded 150.

The subject authority file consists primarily of topical headings coded with MARC 21 tag 150. There are no headings tagged 150 in the name authority file. Tag 150 encompasses a wide array of concepts and phenomena as well as headings for proper-named entities that are not capable of authorship and are needed for subject rather than descriptive access points. Some types of structures and events are coded 110 or 111 while others are coded 150. In cases of doubt, consult SCM H 405 (the "Division of the World" list) and H 1592. Examples of the types of topical headings:

Concepts, phenomena, and processes

150 $a Air pressure
150 $a Cyberterrorism
150 $a Fishes $x Boning
150 $a Housekeeping
150 $a Marijuana abuse
150 $a Meadows $x Fertilization
150 $a Ocean color
150 $a Resort development
150 $a Sexual consent

Disciplines and fields of learning

150 $a Astronomy, Korean
150 $a Crow philosophy
150 $a Equine dentistry
150 $a Neurovirology
150 $a Solar-terrestrial physics

Types of organizations and industries

150 $a Airport retailing
150 $a Biotechnology libraries
150 $a Community development credit unions
150 $a Gay motorcycle clubs
150 $a Internet entertainment industry
150 $a Sea urchin fisheries

Types of objects and structures, including branded merchandise

150 $a Arenas
150 $a Ceramics factories
150 $a ENIAC (Computer)
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

150 $a Mummified animals
150 $a Pneumatic drills
150 $a Toyota 4Runner sport utility vehicle
150 $a Zambonis (Trademark)

Types of geographic and geologic features, including man-made features

150 $a Aquatic parks and reserves
150 $a Cirques (Glacial landforms)
150 $a Demonstration forests
150 $a Fish management areas
150 $a Planetary volcanoes
150 $a Vernal pools

Classes of persons, including ethnic, Indian, religious, and national groups

150 $a African American women tap dancers
150 $a Boaters (Persons)
150 $a Chelan Indians
150 $a Children of teenage mothers
150 $a Ex-gamblers
150 $a Malians
150 $a Primitive Methodists
150 $a Semelai (Malaysian people)
150 $a Shipwreck victims
150 $a Stutterers
150 $a Zuni boys

Proper or common names for chemicals, materials, substances, organisms, breeds, diseases, etc.

150 $a Brazilian pepper tree
150 $a Cat-scratch disease
150 $a Dairy substitutes
150 $a Gamma-hydroxybutyrate
150 $a Renibacterium salmoninarum
150 $a Taffeta
150 $a Tanzanite
150 $a Tomato sauces
150 $a Tonkinese cat

Names of languages, including artificial and computer languages

150 $a CALEX (Computer program language)
150 $a Kwatay language
150 $a Quenya (Artificial language)
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

150 $a Swedish Sign Language
150 $a Urdu language $x Technical Urdu

Types of publications and form/genre headings for literature, arts, music, etc.

According to the MARC 21 authority format, headings for form and genre (i.e., what a bibliographic resource is, contains, or is an example of, rather than what it is about) are tagged 155. However, LC authority records for such terms are currently tagged 150. LC has plans to implement 155 in the future, but no date has yet been set. SACO proposals may be made for form and genre headings, but presently they must be tagged 150.

150 $a Ash Wednesday sermons
150 $a Biographical television programs
150 $a Bisexuals' writings
150 $a Electronic journals
150 $a Equatorial Guinean poetry (Spanish)
150 $a Erotic videos
150 $a Oi music
150 $a Painting, Lithuanian
150 $a Piccolo and xylophone music
150 $a Travelogues (Motion pictures, television, etc.)
150 $a Zombie films

Names of days, months, years, etc.; holidays and commemorations; special days, months, years, decades, etc.

150 $a International Year of Older Persons, 1999
150 $a National Breast Cancer Awareness Month
150 $a Nineteen ninety-seven, A.D.
150 $a Pulaski Day

Events established according to subject cataloging conventions, including accidents, battles, bombings, disasters, epidemics, riots, strikes, trials, wars

150 $a Empire Zinc Company Strike, Hanover, N.M., 1950-1951
150 $a Great Stink, London, England, 1858
150 $a Hurricane Pauline, 1997
150 $a Indian Ocean Tsunami, 2004
150 $a Krusi, Battle of, Krusi, Montenegro, 1796
150 $a Loma Prieta Earthquake, Calif., 1989
150 $a September 11 Terrorist Attacks, 2001
150 $a Swissair Flight 111 Crash, 1998
150 $a Texas A&M Bonfire Collapse, College Station, Tex., 1999
150 $a United States Embassy Bombing, Nairobi, Kenya, 1998
150 $a Ware Mutiny, Ware, Hertfordshire, England, 1647
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

Deities; mythological, legendary, and fictitious characters and places

150 $a Basilisks (Mythical animals)
150 $a Bluebeard (Legendary character)
150 $a Bunyips
150 $a Captain Underpants (Fictitious character)
150 $a Corleone family (Fictitious characters)
150 $a Fountain of youth (Legendary place)
150 $a Kia (Fictitious character : Wooding)
150 $a Quirinus (Roman deity)
150 $a Shangri-La (Imaginary place)

Named animals

150 $a Ben (Fox)
150 $a Benji (Dog)
150 $a Man o’ War (Race horse)
150 $a Woo (Monkey)

Eponyms

150 $a Behçet's disease
150 $a Churg-Strauss syndrome
150 $a Kleinian groups
150 $a Matschie’s tree kangaroo
150 $a Rayleigh flow
150 $a Rubik’s Clock

Named tests and standards

150 $a Childhood Autism Rating Scale
150 $a College Major Interest Inventory
150 $a G-MAP (Personality test)
150 $a International Standard Bibliographic Description for Electronic Resources
150 $a Key Stage 3 National Tests
150 $a Myers-Briggs Type Indicator

Named structures and other non-corporate named entities

150 $a Astoria Column (Astoria, Or.)
150 $a Charles F. Millspaugh Hall (Field Museum of Natural History)
150 $a Galleria delle statue (Museo Pio-Clementino, Vatican City)
150 $a Kiss & Tell (Group of artists)
150 $a Oliver Max Gardner Award
150 $a Peace Arch (Blaine, Wash., and White Rock, B.C.)
150 $a Premio Nacional de Artes Plásticas (Cuba)
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

150 $a Primal Rage (Game)
150 $a Tomb of the Patriarchs (Hebron)

Political, social, religious, artistic, and literary movements and schools of thought

150 $a Anti-feminism
150 $a Anti-rape movement
150 $a Black Arts movement
150 $a Durkheimian school of sociology
150 $a Lithuanian resistance movement, 1944-1953
150 $a Lьvov-Warsaw school of philosophy
150 $a Neoromanticism (Music)
150 $a Taos school of art
150 $a Ultraism (Literary movement)

The form in which topical headings are established varies. Some of the possibilities include:

Simple and compound nouns

150 $a Aperitifs
150 $a Chintzware
150 $a Pollinators
150 $a Recitative
150 $a Redwoods

Nouns with adjectives

150 $a Best friends
150 $a Fascist aesthetics
150 $a Introduced fishes
150 $a Miniature teddy bears
150 $a Pacific Islander American legislators
150 $a Pet shop owners
150 $a Surprise birthday parties

Phrases and compounds

150 $a Arts and the poor
150 $a Cannibalism in motion pictures
150 $a Chernobyl Nuclear Accident, Chornobyl', Ukraine, 1986, in art
150 $a Church work with ex-convicts
150 $a Firearms and crime
150 $a Gay man-heterosexual woman relationships on television
150 $a Hockey for girls
150 $a Homophobia in schools
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

150 $a Literature rejected for publication
150 $a Rattlesnakes as pets
150 $a Space flight to Saturn

Qualified terms

Parenthetical qualifiers are used for a variety of purposes, including to distinguish homonyms, to remove ambiguity or provide elucidation, to indicate proper names, and to provide the geographic location of a structure or battle. See SCM H 357 for further instructions on when qualifiers should be used.

150 $a Abe (African people)
150 $a ASCII (Character set)
150 $a Cookery (Shad)
150 $a Eastern and Oriental Express (Express train)
150 $a Eld (The Swedish word)
150 $a English language $v Conversation and phrase books (for accountants)
150 $a Firewalls (Computer security)
150 $a Flambards (England : Imaginary place)
150 $a Merlot (Wine)
150 $a Katharina (Mollusks)
150 $a Rachel's Tomb (Bethlehem)

Inverted terms

SCM H 306 provides background and guidelines for formulating new topical headings in direct or inverted form. Topical headings qualified by languages, nationalities, or ethnic groups are established in inverted form with exceptions for language and literature headings and U.S. ethnic groups and Indian groups that are noted in H 306. Inverted headings are also made for subjects qualified by time period and by artistic or musical style, and for fossils (see SCM H 1332 sec. 10), battles (H 1285), certain geographics (H 690), some fictitious and legendary characters (H 1795), and royal houses, etc. (H 1574).

150 $a Baskets, Iban
150 $a Boats, Ancient
150 $a Feathers, Fossil
150 $a Folk songs, Celtic
150 $a Genre painting, Renaissance
150 $a Martinići, Battle of, Martinići, Montenegro, 1796
150 $a National characteristics, Peruvian
150 $a People with disabilities, Writings of, Russian
150 $a Philosophy, Mongolian
150 $a Sandiego, Carmen (Fictitious character)
150 $a Transportation, Prehistoric
Headings with subdivisions

SACO proposals may be made to establish non-free-floating subdivisions under established topical headings (see SCM H 1095-H 1145.5 (lists of general categories), H 1146-H 1200 (pattern heading lists), examples Z and AA on pp. 76-78 of this manual, and examples below). Subject authority records are also created for topical heading/free-floating subdivision and topical heading/geographic subdivision combinations that are needed as broader or related term references on proposed headings (see SCM H 200 sec. 8c), but such "backdoor headings" need not be proposed by SACO participants.

150 $a Advertising $x Baking powder
150 $a Animals $x Longevity
150 $a Art, Chinese $x Western influences
150 $a Australian states $x Politics and government
150 $a Business enterprises $x Size
150 $a Chinese provinces $x Economic conditions
150 $a Church history $y 2nd century
150 $a Cookery, Tanzanian $x Zanzibari style
150 $a Corporal punishment of children $x Religious aspects
150 $a Digital images $x Watermarking
150 $a Dispersing agents $x Effectiveness $x Monitoring
150 $a English language $v Conversation and phrase books (for caregivers)
150 $a Food $x Vitamin E content
150 $a French language $y 17th century
150 $a Indians of Central America $x First contact with Europeans
150 $a Indigenous peoples $x Urban residence
150 $a International trade $x Effect of terrorism on
150 $a Kangaroo meat $x Quality
150 $a Knives $x Sharpening
150 $a Paleoclimatology $y Cretaceous
150 $a Pensions $x Effect of deflation on
150 $a Seawater $x Amino acid content
150 $a Theaters $x Restrooms
150 $a Turkish poetry $y 17th century
150 $a Wetland restoration $x Law and legislation
**MARC Authority Format for Subjects**

**151: Geographic Name**

No indicators are used in headings coded 151.

Geographic entities are tagged 151 in authority records. Non-jurisdictional geographic entities are established according to subject cataloging rules (see SCM H 690-H 1055) and reside in LCSH. Headings for jurisdictions are established by NACO libraries in name authority records according to descriptive cataloging rules (AACR2). Jurisdictional headings may not be submitted via SACO.

Consult SCM H 405 to determine whether a named entity is considered geographic and coded 151 and whether it is established as a name authority or as a subject heading.

Consult SCM H 690 sec. 3-9 for instructions on when to use the English or vernacular form of a geographic name, how to arrange the elements of a name, how to treat abbreviations and initial articles, transliteration, when to capitalize, and what to do with conflicts involving geographic names. Consult H 810 for instructions on qualifying geographic headings.

Non-jurisdictional geographic headings needed as subjects should be proposed through SACO. Examples of non-jurisdictional geographic headings:

**Entities wholly within one jurisdiction**

151 $a Bjelopavlići Plain (Montenegro)
151 $a Coorong, The (S. Aust.)
151 $a Dhoo, River (Isle of Man)
151 $a Dzūkijos Nacionalinis parkas (Lithuania)
151 $a Elkharas Site (Turkmenistan)
151 $a Erie, Lake, Coast (Ohio)
151 $a Farafra Oasis (Egypt)
151 $a Glenlivet, Braes of (Scotland)
151 $a Great Blackfeet Reservation (Mont.)
151 $a Idarado Mine (Colo.)
151 $a Kostromskaja taezhna biologicheska stan’ Region (Russia)
151 $a Lihou Reef National Nature Reserve (Coral Sea Islands)
151 $a Malawali Island (Sabah)
151 $a Mellen Street Interchange (Interstate 5)
151 $a Močovice Site (Czech Republic)
151 $a Prydz Bay (Antarctica)
151 $a Raritan River, South Branch, Watershed (N.J.)
151 $a Seattle-Tacoma International Airport Region (Wash.)
151 $a Þingvellir þjóðgarður (Iceland)
151 $a Triangular Forum (Pompeii)
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

Entities wholly within one jurisdiction, but conflict exists between two or more entities with same name

151 $a Cedar Creek (Candler County-Evans County, Ga.)
151 $a Fauntleroy Park (Seattle, Wash. : Barton Street)
151 $a Fort Spokane (Lincoln County, Wash. : Fort)
151 $a Honey Creek (Walworth County and Racine County, Wis. : River)
151 $a Lewis Canyon (Val Verde County, Tex.)
151 $a Ngum River (Xiangkhoang Province and Viangchan Prefecture, Laos)
151 $a Rock Island (Ill. : Island)
151 $a Skaftö (Västra Götalands län, Sweden : Island)

Entities in two jurisdictions

151 $a Amistad Reservoir (Tex. and Mexico)
151 $a Black Mountains (Wales and England)
151 $a Calabar-Ugep-Ikom Road (Nigeria and Cameroon)
151 $a Kicking Horse Pass (Alta. and B.C.)
151 $a Knife Lake (Minn. and Ont.)
151 $a Walla Walla Valley (Or. and Wash.)

Entities in more than two jurisdictions or no jurisdiction

151 $a Altai-Sayan Ecoregion
151 $a Axial Seamount
151 $a California Current
151 $a Jefferson National Forest
151 $a Lewis and Clark Bicycle Trail
151 $a Mandab, Strait of
151 $a Steens Fault Zone
151 $a United States Highway 26

Entities qualified by a directional qualifier

151 $a Australia, Northern
151 $a Nigeria, Southwest
151 $a Ontario, Eastern
151 $a Queensland, South East
151 $a Siberia, Northeastern (Russia)

Entities qualified by city or cities

151 $a 118th Avenue (Edmonton, Alta.)
151 $a Ambassador Bridge (Detroit, Mich., and Windsor, Ont.)
151 $a Antonia Fortress (Jerusalem)
151 $a Cabrillo National Monument (San Diego, Calif.)
Extraterrestrial entities

151 $a Bacchus (Asteroid)
151 $a Ganymede (Satellite)
151 $a Halley's comet
151 $a Horsehead Nebula
151 $a Jupiter (Planet)
151 $a Kuiper Belt
151 $a Lavinia Planitia (Venus)
151 $a Mare Orientale (Moon)
151 $a Nova Persei 1901
151 $a P Cygni
151 $a Planum Australe (Mars)
151 $a Triangulum Galaxy

Entities qualified to explain the nature of the name

151 $a 9969 Braille (Asteroid)
151 $a Callisto (Satellite)
151 $a Hermitage (Tayside, Scotland : Trail)
151 $a K2 (Pakistan : Mountain)
151 $a M81 (Galaxy)
151 $a Midea (Extinct city)
151 $a Saint Ives (England : Park)

Headings with subdivisions

SACO proposals may be made to establish non-free-floating subdivisions under established geographic headings (see SCM H 1095, H 1140-H 1145.5, and examples below). Subject authority records are also created for geographic heading/free-floating subdivision combinations that are needed as broader or related term references on proposed headings (see SCM H 200 sec. 8c), but such "backdoor headings" need not be proposed by SACO participants.

151 $a Afghanistan $x Politics and government $y 2001-
151 $a Calais (France) $x History $y Siege, 1346-1347
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

151 $a China $x Foreign relations $y 618-907
151 $a Eros (Asteroid) $v Globes
151 $a Europa (Satellite) $x Geology
151 $a Fortaleza de San Carlos (Maracaibo, Venezuela) $x Bombardment, 1903
151 $a France $x Intellectual life $x American influences
151 $a Greece $x Social conditions $y 1453-1821
151 $a Holy Roman Empire $x History $y Otto III, 983-1002
151 $a Macau (China : Special Administrative Region) $x History $y Transfer of Sovereignty from Portugal, 1999
151 $a Mediterranean Region $x Economic conditions $y 1945-
151 $a Mars (Planet) $x Gravity $x Seasonal variations
151 $a Rome $x Economic conditions $y 30 B.C.-476 A.D.
151 $a Uranus (Planet) $x Satellites $v Ephemerides
151 $a Slovenia $x History $y Revolution, 1848-1849
151 $a Sudan $x History $y Darfur Conflict, 2003-
151 $a Venus (Planet) $x Meteorology
151 $a Vietnam $x Civilization $x Confucian influences
151 $a West Indies $x Civilization $x Cuban influences
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

260: General See Reference

This field is used for general see references. Its use is described in SCM H 374. A general see reference is a use reference made not to specific individual headings but to a category of subject headings or subdivisions. Records for general see references are reference records rather than heading records and, in addition to the presence of a 260 field, may be identified by value b or c in fixed field 008/09 (Kind of Record).

Both indicators in 260 are blank. Subfield $i is used for explanatory text and subfield $a contains the heading(s) or subdivision(s) referred to. The term or terms referred from are given in a 150 field. In addition to the examples below, a full MARC example of a general see reference authority record may be seen in the section on fixed field 008/09 (p. 94).

150 $a Areas
260 $i subject headings for specific types of areas, e.g. $a Earthquake zones; Health service areas; Pedestrian areas; Wine districts

150 $a Characters and characteristics in music
260 $i subdivision $a Characters $i under headings for dramatic musical compositions, e.g. $a Operas--Characters

150 $a Environmental conditions
260 $i subdivision $a Environmental conditions $i under names of countries, cities, etc.

150 $a Iraqi literature
260 $i subject headings for Arabic literature or specific forms of Arabic literature with subdivision Iraq, e.g. $a Arabic literature--Iraq; Arabic poetry—Iraq

150 $a Myanmaran . . .
260 $i subject headings beginning with or qualified by the word $a Burmese, $i e.g. $a Burmese literature; Art, Burmese

150 $a Same-gender . . .
260 $i subject headings beginning with the words $a Gay, Lesbian, Same-sex, $i and $a Single-sex

150 $a Urologic . . .
260 $i headings beginning with the word $a Urological, $i e.g. $a Urological emergencies

Note: In general see references, the term in the 150 is not a subject heading authorized for use. Only the terms referred to in the 260 are authorized. In the first example above, Areas is not a valid heading for use in bibliographic records. The reference in the 260 field instructs catalogers instead to use headings established for specific types of areas,
and gives some examples. In the third example above, \textbf{Environmental conditions} is only authorized for use as a topical subdivision, not as a main subject heading. General see references from non-used variant forms of national and ethnic adjectival qualifiers and from variant spellings or forms of common words used in several headings are shown in the final three examples above. The non-used form is followed by three dots (ellipses) to refer to any term that begins with that non-used form.
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

360: General See Also Reference

This field is used for general see also references. Its use is described in SCM H 371. A general see also reference is a reference made from a heading not to specific individual headings but to an entire category of headings or subdivisions, frequently listing one or more individual headings or subdivisions by way of example. Subfield $i is used for explanatory text and subfield $a contains the heading(s) or subdivision(s) referred to. Both indicators in 360 are blank.

Current LC policy is to provide specific broader term references in preference to a single general see also reference whenever possible. General see also references are now made only in the following circumstances:

- To refer from a generic heading to a free-floating subdivision. Examples:

  150  $a Human-animal relationships
  360  $i subdivision $a Effect of human beings on $i under individual animals and groups of animals, e.g. $a Fishes--Effect of human beings on

  150  $a Installation of equipment
  360  $i subdivision $a Installation $i under types of equipment

- To refer from a subject heading to a category of subject headings, or to a type of name heading that is normally not included in the subject authority file. Examples:

  150  $a Football stadiums
  360  $i names of individual football stadiums

  150  $a Forest insects
  360  $i individual insects and groups of insects, e.g. $a Pine-moth; Sawflies

- To refer from a generic heading to a group of headings that begin with the same word. Example:

  150  $a Science
  360  $i headings beginning with the word $a Scientific; $i and subdivision $a Science $i under ethnic groups and individual wars, e.g. $a World War, 1939-1945--Science
4XX: See From Tracings (Used For Cross-References)

4XX fields are used to record cross-references from forms not used to the authorized heading in 1XX. SCM H 373 provides detailed information on "used for" references and when to include them in SACO proposals. Generally speaking, used for references are made for alternative equivalent terms and phrases (synonyms), and abbreviations, acronyms, etc., of the form selected as the heading. They are also made for inverted forms of significant words in a phrase, and from the straight form of a phrase when the heading itself is inverted. When a subject heading is changed from one form to another, the previous form of the heading is usually retained in the authority record as a linking reference, with subfield $w$ coded nne (earlier form of heading), unless it normalizes to the same form as the revised heading. The latter situation would occur if the only change being made were one of capitalization, addition or deletion of diacritics, or addition or deletion of a hyphen. Multiple used for references should be given in alphabetical order. Examples:

100 1 $a$McCartney, Paul $x$Death hoax
450 $a$Death hoax of Paul McCartney
450 $a$McCartney death rumor
450 $a$Paul is dead hoax
450 $a$Paul McCartney death hoax
450 $a$Paul McCartney is dead (Hoax)

100 3 $a$Umayyad dynasty
400 3 $a$Banū Umaiya
400 3 $a$Banū →Umajja dynasty
400 3 $a$Banū Umayya dynasty
450 $w$nne $a$Omayyads
450 $w$nne $a$Omayyads in Spain
400 3 $a$Omeyyad dynasty
400 3 $a$Ommiad dynasty
400 3 $a$Umeyyads
400 3 $a$Ummayyads

110 2 $a$Arvfurstens palats (Stockholm, Sweden)
410 2 $a$Arfprinsens palais (Stockholm, Sweden)
410 2 $a$Palace of the Prince Royal (Stockholm, Sweden)

130 0 $a$Bible $x$In motion pictures
450 $a$Biblical themes in motion pictures

150 $a$Abe (African people)
450 $a$Abbe (African people)
450 $a$Abbey (African people)
450 $a$Abi (African people)
450 $a$Aby (African people)
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

150 $a Ash Wednesday sermons
450 $a Ash Wednesday $v Sermons

150 $a Marinas $x Fees
450 $a Marina fees
450 $a Marina rates
450 $a Marinas $x Rates

150 $a National characteristics, Peruvian
450 $a Peruvian national characteristics

150 $a Piccolo and xylophone music
450 $a Xylophone and piccolo music

151 $a Madhupur Jungle (Bangladesh)
451 $a Garh Gazali (Bangladesh)
451 $a Modhupur Forest (Bangladesh)
451 $a Modhupur Garh Forest (Bangladesh)

151 $a Mars (Planet) $x Volcanism
450 $a Martian volcanism

151 $a Midea (Extinct city)
451 $w nne $a Midea Site (Greece)
451 $a Mideia (Extinct city)
451 $a Persepolis (Greece : Extinct city)

151 $a Parque Nacional Iguazú (Argentina)
451 $a Iguazu National Park (Argentina)
5XX: See Also From Tracings (See Also Cross-References)

5XX fields are used to create see also references. These may be nonhierarchical references (also called related term references) or they may be hierarchical, referring the user to a broader term in a hierarchy. Only related and broader terms are explicitly recorded in authority records. Narrower terms are not recorded in subject authorities, but they may be generated in online systems and displays through the hierarchical broader term coding. SCM H 370 provides detailed information on see also references. SCM H 375 describes LCSH policy for Topic--Place broader term references.

All 5XX headings in authority records must also have their own separate authority records (coded as 1XX). If a 5XX heading in a SACO proposal does not already have its own authority record, a separate proposal for it must also be submitted, unless it is a backdoor heading (i.e., a heading consisting of a main heading combined with either a free-floating or geographic subdivision). CPSO staff in the Subject Heading Editorial Team (SHed) will create authority records for backdoor headings if the SACO library does not propose them.

If a proposed heading is conceptually a broader term to a heading that already exists in LCSH, a change proposal to add the new heading as a BT on the existing heading must accompany the proposal for the new heading.

Related term references are made in order to link two headings that are neither broader nor narrower than each other. The reference from one to the other must be made on both authority records. This means that a SACO proposal for a new heading might also require a change proposal for another already existing authority record. LC has restrictive policies in place on making related term references. SCM H 370 provides instructions on when making related term references is and is not permissible.

Not all headings require broader term references. The SCM calls these "orphan" headings and lists the types of situations in which a heading without a broader term is permitted.

When a heading has both broader term and related term references, all the broader terms should be given first, in alphabetical order, followed by all the related terms in alphabetical order.

Subfield $w is used to code broader term references. The value g in subfield $w indicates a broader term. Subfield $w is not used for related term references.

Examples:

100 3 $a Lopez family
500 3 $a Lopes de Mendonça family
500 3 $a Pérez-López y López-Silvero family
500 3 $a Restrepo family
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

100 1 $a Presley, Elvis, $d 1935-1977 $x Sightings
550 $w g $a Apparitions

100 3 $a Umayyad dynasty
551 $w g $a Islamic Empire $x Kings and rulers

110 2 $a Grady Gammage Memorial Auditorium (Tempe, Ariz.)
550 $w g $a Auditoriums $z Arizona
550 $w g $a College buildings $z Arizona

110 2 $a United Nations $x Peacekeeping forces
550 $w g $a Peacekeeping forces
510 2 $w g $a United Nations $x Armed Forces

111 2 $a Super Bowl $x Records
550 $w g $a Sports records

150 $a Abe (African people)
550 $w g $a Ethnology $z Côte d'Ivoire

150 $a Coptic chants
550 $w g $a Chants
510 2 $w g $a Coptic Church $x Liturgy

150 $a Exploitation films
550 $w g $a Motion pictures
550 $a Sensationalism in motion pictures

150 $a Krusi, Battle of, Krusi, Montenegro, 1796
551 $w g $a Montenegro $x History $y Peter I, 1782-1830

150 $a Sensationalism in motion pictures
550 $w g $a Motion pictures
550 $a Exploitation films

151 $a Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.)
550 $w g $a Mountains $z Arkansas
550 $w g $a Mountains $z Oklahoma
551 $w g $a Ozark Mountains

151 $a Calais (France) $x History $y Siege, 1346-1347
550 $w g $a Sieges $z France

151 $a France $x Intellectual life $x American influences
551 $w g $a United States $x Civilization
667: Nonpublic General Note

Field 667 is used to record general information about a 1XX heading for which a specialized note field has not been defined. The note is "nonpublic" because it is not intended to display to catalog users. Generally 667 notes are used in subject authority records for instructions to catalogers. Both indicators in 667 are blank.

667 is most commonly used in subject authority records to state that a geographic subject heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision (see SCM H 836). This applies to headings for celestial bodies and to features within cities (e.g., plazas, circles, squares, monuments, parks, gardens, streets, bridges, tunnels, archaeological sites, etc.). In cases such as this, SACO proposals should contain a 667 note stating: "This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision." If a geographic subject heading is valid for use as a geographic subdivision, instead of a 667 note there should be a 781 field showing the form of the heading when used as a subdivision (see p. 150).

Examples:

151 $a 118th Avenue (Edmonton, Alta.)
667 $a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.

151 $a Donald L. Garrity Japanese Garden (Ellensburg, Wash.)
667 $a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.

151 $a Old Dorchester State Park (Summerville, S.C.)
667 $a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.

151 $a Piazza del Duomo (Lecce, Italy)
667 $a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.

151 $a Supernova 1054
667 $a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

670: Source Data Found

Key Documentation: SCM H 203

The 670 field is used to supply citations to sources used to establish the heading and any cross-references to it. Both indicators in 670 fields are blank. The first 670 is usually used to cite the work being cataloged and the citation of it is preceded by the phrase Work cat.: The additional sources that were consulted in carrying out authority research are cited separately in other 670s.

Generally, SACO proposals must contain at least one citation for the work being cataloged and/or sources consulted to support a subject heading proposal. SCM H 203 provides general information on citing sources. The SACO website has a list of useful Web-based reference sources (http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/resources.html).

Before February 2000, H 203 contained lists of commonly consulted sources along with recommended abbreviations to cite in proposals. In 2000 LC revised H 203 and deleted these lists, but the abbreviations will be found in authority records established prior to this date, and catalogers familiar with them will likely continue to use them for some time to come. Examples of abbreviated source titles are included below and can also be seen in the subject authority proposals found elsewhere in this manual. Some of the most frequently abbreviated sources are Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language, Unabridged (Web. 3), The Columbia Gazetteer of the World (Columbia gaz.), The World Book Encyclopedia (World Book), and The New Encyclopaedia Britannica (Britannica). The Britannica's Micropaedia and Macropaedia sections are cited as Britannica Micro. and Britannica Macro., respectively.

A citation should provide the main entry, if any, title proper (or title and subtitle if the subtitle furnishes additional information), and date(s) of publication in the form found in the publication, distribution, etc. area of the bibliographic record for that source. Do not include brackets around dates, but do give any symbols ("c" for copyright, "p" for sound recording copyright, question marks, and hyphens) that would be in the bibliographic record. If the publication has multiple dates, record them. If the bibliographic record has both Gregorian and non-Gregorian dates, record only the Gregorian date.

For personal author main entries, initials may be used instead of full forenames. Titles may be abridged or words in them abbreviated as long as the information is clear and the source can be easily identified. Note that citation practice for SACO proposals varies from NACO practices: main entries are generally not given in name authority citations. Remote electronic resources may be cited in a variety of ways, depending on the type of resource (see below for examples).

If the source being cited is a nonbook format, a general material designation (GMD) or an abbreviated form of GMD may be added after the title and before the date. This is not required, but it is sometimes useful to identify the format of the material being cited. Use [SR] for sound recordings, [VR] for videorecordings, [MP] for motion pictures, [MF] for
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

microforms, and [CM] for maps and other cartographic material (note: authority records may be found in which the obsolete GMD [map] was used). The designation [CF] for computer files may be seen in some authority records, but since Chapter 9 of AACR2 has been renamed "Electronic Resources," new authority records should use [ER] if the addition of a GMD would be useful.

When citing a serial, provide the volume number or date of the issue(s) consulted.

670 $a Biol. & agr. index: $b v. 38
670 $a New York times index, 1984
670 $a Educ. index, May 1984
670 $a Pharmaceutical trends, Jan. 1978: $b p. 2

The citation itself is included in subfield $a of the 670. In some cases, all that is needed is the citation for a source, because the information justifying the subject heading proposal is included in the title of that source. In other cases, information found within a source must be supplied. In 670s, the location of the information found in the source and the information itself is included in subfield $b.

In citations, a colon is added following the date(s) of publication if a specific location within a source is specified. Specific locations are omitted if (a) the source being cited is alphabetically arranged and (b) the heading being proposed, or a reference to it, is found in its normal alphabetical location in the source. Specific locations may also be omitted if the heading being proposed is included in the title of a source and no other information from within that source is needed as additional support or justification for the proposal or for variant terms found elsewhere in the source. If a Web page or other electronic resource is cited and the information is taken from the first screen viewed when connecting to that page, the specific location can also usually be omitted.

Location information is given first in subfield $b, followed by the information found at that location enclosed in parentheses. Information may be paraphrased, or it may be quoted from the source.

When citing locations within a source, use standard terms and abbreviations such as:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>t.p.</th>
<th>t.p. verso</th>
<th>map recto</th>
<th>map verso</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jkt. label</td>
<td>abstr. cover</td>
<td>introd. insert</td>
<td>p. 3 of cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>index</td>
<td>leaf 1 pp. 28-29</td>
<td>home page</td>
<td>v. 4, t.p.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. xi</td>
<td>container</td>
<td>prelim. p.</td>
<td>title screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credits</td>
<td>leaf 1 pp. 28-29</td>
<td>PDF p. iii</td>
<td>HTML header</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. opp. t.p.</td>
<td>prelim. p.</td>
<td>table of contents p.</td>
<td>verso of image</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that when the cover or any other source substitutes for the chief source, it should be cited as "t.p." Generally, if information comes from a specific page, cite the number of
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

the page (unless the specific location can be omitted as described above). Do not include brackets around inferred numbers.

If the source or information cited contains diacritics or other special characters that cannot be keyed on the Web proposal form or into an email proposal, substitute the name of the diacritic or character in parentheses in front of the letter to which it applies, e.g., Ban(macron)u (alif)Umajja for Banū → Umajja. Appendix A, Additional Examples of SACO Proposals for New LCSH shows examples of this technique applied throughout a SACO proposal.

Examples:

Abbreviated Sources as Listed in SCM H 203 Prior to February 2000

670   $a Britannica Micro.: $b v. 2, p. 244 (Biton and Cleobis; Biton also spelled Bito; sons of Cydippe, priestess of Hera; noted for their filial devotion and athletic prowess)

670   $a Web. 3 $b (durian; also durion; Durio zibethinus)

670   $a Web. geog. $b (Ngorongoro Crater. Extinct volcanic crater, N. cen. Tanzania)

670   $a Ruhlen world lang.: $b p. 307 (Mundu, under Adamawa-Ubangian branch of Niger-Congo languages)

Printed Sources

Work being cataloged


Alphabetically arranged source

670   $a Columbia gaz. $b (Litchfield Hills, NW Conn., S extension of the Berkshires running E of Housatonic R., in NW Litchfield Co.)

Location within source cited

670   $a Work cat.: The national artists of the Philippines, c1998: $b p. xi (National Artist Award or Gawad Artista ng Bayan; est. 1972 to honor Filipinos who have made outstanding contributions to Philippine arts and letters)

670   $a Gale encyc. of Native American tribes, c1998: $b pp. 316-321 (Duwamish; one of the many Salishan tribes in the Puget Sound Area)
Multiple locations within source

670  $a Work cat.: Diet and health in past animal populations, c2005: $b pref. (animal palaeopathological and dietary studies) p. 1 (animal palaeopathology; palaeopathology as a sub-discipline within zooarchaeology) p. 7 (veterinary palaeopathology)

670  $a New Grove dict. of mus. instr.: $b v. 3, p. 501 (taiko; generic term for all Japanese drums; commonly applied only to cylindrical or barrel drums) v. 9, p. 519 (the taiko is a shallow barrel drum with two cowhide heads)

Other title information included for clarification

670  $a Morris, D. Cool cats : the 100 cat breeds of the world, 1999: $b p. 122 (Tonkinese cat; formerly called the Golden Siamese; short-haired American hybrid created by crossing Siamese and Burmese)

670  $a Work cat.: Los caminos al Río Magdalena : la frontera del Carare y del Opón, 1760-1860, 2000: $b p. 15 (the region of the Opón) p. 139 (Opón River)

Quoted information

670  $a Work cat.: Hagberg, S. Between peace and justice : dispute settlement between Karaboro agriculturalists and Fulbe agro-pastoralists in Burkina Faso, 1998: $b p. 19 ("The Karaboro, who consider themselves to belong to the large group of Senufo peoples ...") p. 103 ("The Karaboro are said to originate from Senufo country in the north of the territory of today's Ivory Coast ... The Karaboro generally refer to themselves as Kaye when speaking their own language, but as Karaboro in all other contexts.")

Serials

670  $a Annual review of materials sci., v. 29: $b p. 53 (Magnetic force microscopy is a special mode of noncontact operation of the scanning force microscope)

670  $a Journal of magnetism and magnetic materials, Oct. 1991: $b p. 263 (abstr.: Magnetic force microscopy (MFM) is a scanned probe technique for imaging microfields near surfaces of magnetic media)

Nonbook Materials (Scores, Sound Recordings, Videorecordings, Cartographic Materials, Visual Resources)

Scores

670  $a Work cat.: Smith, S. The night is never long, c1998 $b (for piccolo and xylophone)
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

670 $a Work cat.: Dinescu, V. Medrea : für Klarinette oder Bassklarinette und Orgel, 1996?

Sound Recordings


670 $a Work cat.: Panhuysen, P. Engines in power and love, 1992: $b label (music performed by 5 matrix computer printers)

670 $a Work cat.: The International Computer Music Association commission awards, 1994-96 [SR], p1997: $b insert (Birdwing; for shakuhachi and tape)

Video Recordings

670 $a Work cat.: Return to the Dying rooms [VR], c1996: $b accomp. documentation (infant girls; baby girls)

670 $a Work cat.: The story of the Lacey V. Murrow Floating Bridge [VR], 1993 $b (pontoon bridge in Seattle, largest floating bridge in the world; designed by Homer M. Hadley and state highway engineer Lacey V. Murrow, opened on July 2, 1940; a new floating bridge upgrade project was completed on Sept. 12, 1993, despite problems caused when portions of the old floating bridge were damaged by a severe storm in 1990)

Cartographic Materials


670 $a Work cat.: Minnesota. Dept. of Natural Resources. Banning State Park, c1999: $b map verso (located in Pine County, four miles north of the city of Sandstone; est. 1963; 6,237 acres)

670 $a DeLorme Mapping Co. Alaska atlas & gaz., c1992: $b p. 7 (Chugach State Park)

Visual Resources


(A digital photograph)
MARC Authority Format for Subjects


(A poster)

670 $a Work cat.: Seattle Municipal Street Railway. Seattle Municipal Street Railway photograph collection, 1913-1940 $b (Westlake Avenue; Westlake Avenue N.; Seattle)

670 $a Work cat.: Jackson St. between 11th Avenue and 12th Avenue, showing several men with horse-drawn carts, Seattle, 1883, via the Theodore E. Peiser photographs digital collection, viewed July 30, 2003.

670 $a House of LeGrand Lockwood, 1869 $b (on architectural first story plan: House of LeGrand Lockwood; label on verso: LeGrand Lockwood Mansion, Norwalk, Conn.)

(An architectural drawing)

670 $a Jenis-jenis Kangguru-pohon [picture], 199- $b (Kangguru-pohon Bennett (Dendrolagus bennettianus), “Jarabeena”, Bennett’s Tree-kangaroo)

(A poster)

670 $a University of Washington campus photographs, via WWW, Jan. 16, 2003 $b (Administration Building (now Denny Hall); built in 1895)

Bibliographic Databases

Cite the name of the bibliographic database or utility consulted and the date it was searched. In the subfield $b, give terms or phrases found, terms from titles of works, subject headings, etc., specifying the specific type of information if necessary.

Cite titles or terms found in bibliographic databases to justify variants included in 4XX cross-references. Under no circumstances is it appropriate to cite a title simply to provide further substantiation for the form of heading chosen. Bibliographic database citations should provide new information not present elsewhere in the proposed authority record.

670 $a LC database, May 14, 1999 $b (systems librarians; systems managers)

670 $a LC database, Dec. 20, 1999 $b (titles: business ethics; ethics of business; ethics of business enterprise; corporation ethics)

670 $a OCLC, Mar. 23, 2001 $b (germplasm resources; genetic resources; germ plasm resources; gene resources)
Remote Electronic Resources

Because many remote electronic resources are dynamic and the information on them may change, the date of publication of the resource is generally not as important as the date on which the resource was consulted.

For well known Internet resources and search engines, specify the name of the resource and the date searched. Use standard abbreviations for frequently consulted sources (e.g., GNIS for Geographic Names Information System, GNS or GEOnet for GEOnet Names Server, ITIS for Integrated Taxonomic Information System).

For resources with a specific title, give the main entry if any and the title, followed by the phrase "via WWW" and the date on which the resource was viewed. If necessary, specify the location of the information in the source by giving a path of links to follow in subfield $b, using slashes to separate each step (link) in the path.

If desired, the phrase “Electronic reproduction/” or an abbreviated form such as “Electr. reprodu.” may be added in front of a citation to indicate that the resource consulted was an electronic reproduction rather than the original. The date viewed may be omitted in such a case.
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

670 $a Work cat.: Electr. reprod./ Fortescue, M. Breeding biology and management of the little penguin, Eudyptula minor (Forster), 1780, on Bowen Island, Jervis Bay, 1991: $b leaf iv (Bowen Island in the Commonwealth Territory of Jervis Bay) leaf 11 (35deg.07min.S 150deg.46min.E; 51 ha off the north eastern tip of the Bherwerre Peninsula within the Commonwealth Territory of Jervis Bay)

670 $a Seychelles : a country study, via WWW, Feb. 26, 2001 $b (Term for Citizens: Seychellois)

670 $a Amer. Heritage dict. of the Eng. lang., via WWW, Apr. 12, 2001 $b (alcalde: the mayor or chief judicial official of a Spanish town)

670 $a Washington place names database, via WWW, Dec. 2, 1999 $b (Padilla Bay; between Samish Island and Swinomish Channel directly east of Anacortes in west central Skagit County; the bay was named Seno de Padilla in 1791; the name was changed to its present form in 1847)

670 $a Parousia Missions page, via WWW, Jan. 7, 1999: $b unreached people groups/Africa/Burkina Faso/Karaboro ("The Karaboro tribe of Burkina Faso are also know[n] as Kar, Kama, Karama and Koroma"; pop. 41,100)

For home pages, give the name of the organization or person followed by “home page,” “Web site,” or similar phrase and the date consulted. If the information in the site is not on the main page, specify a path to follow and give this in the subfield $b ahead of the information found. Use slashes to separate each step (link) in the path.

670 $a Duwamish Tribe WWW home page, Sept. 10, 1999 $b (Duwamish)

670 $a N.Z. Dept. of Conservation home page, Nov. 9, 2005: $b national parks (Rakiura National Park)

670 $a National register of historic places WWW home page, Nov. 2, 1999: $b travel/Seattle/list of sites (Volunteer Park)

670 $a Mapquest Web site, Oct. 5, 2005 $b (Melrose Ave; Melrose Ave E; Seattle; named Melrose Ave E north of E Denny Way and Melrose Ave south of E Denny Way)


670 $a Treadmillscentral.com Web site, June 14, 2005: $b why a treadmill (Treadmills are the best-selling home exercise machine in the U.S.)
Since January 2006, catalogers are permitted *optionally* to include a uniform resource identifier (URI) in subfield $u$ of field 670 to link to the cited resource if it contains significant information related to the established heading that cannot be cited succinctly in the authority record. Use of a URI in the 670 $u$ does not take the place of the requirement to cite relevant data in subfields $a$ and $b$ of the 670 field needed to support the heading or references (this information will continue to be available if the site changes or disappears). Do not provide URIs for general reference sources or for web-based reference sources that are included in the LCRIs (e.g., *Contemporary Authors Online*, GNIS, *GEOnet*). If a URI is included, it must be given in subfield $u$. If the URI contains a spacing tilde or a spacing underscore, replace the character with its corresponding hex code, preceded by the percent sign:

- %7E for a spacing tilde (~)
- %5F for a spacing underscore (_)
- %20 for a space character ( )

The use of search engine results to substantiate the form of heading chosen or to justify cross-references should be used wisely, and not merely to demonstrate that a Web search yields a number of hits on resources which use a particular term. The search engine cited needs to provide additional information not readily available elsewhere. Additionally, search engine results may be cited to show that one term is preferred over another.

670  $a$ AltaVista, March 24, 1999  $b$ (Saemaul Undong; New village movement; New community movement)

670  $a$ Yahoo!, Nov. 28, 2000  $b$ (category: Entertainment > Movies and Film > Genres > Mockumentaries; terms in linked resources: mock documentary; mockumentaries; fake documentary; fake documentary films)

670  $a$ Google search, Sept. 23, 2005  $b$ (Psittacine Beak and Feather Disease; PBFD; Psittacine beak and feather disease (or psittacine circovirus, PCV); Beak and feather disease (psittacine circoviral disease); Psittacine circoviral disease (PCD); psittacine circoviral (beak and feather) disease; Psittacine Circovirus Disease (PCD))

670  $a$ Google search, Apr. 25, 2003  $b$ (15,200 hits on "keyboard players"; 12,700 hits on "keyboards"; 5 hits on "keyboard instrument players"; 47 hits on "keyboard players"; 47 hits on "keyboard instrumentalists")

**Personal Correspondence**

SCM H 203 instructs catalogers to include the date of telephone calls (and by extension, other forms of correspondence) only when adding a citation to an existing authority record to support a change of heading or reference. When pertinent and available, include a person's title and the organization with which (s)he is affiliated. Provide in
parentheses in subfield $b a brief summary of the relevant information provided by the correspondant.

670 $a Phone call to T. Irwin, curator, Dept. of Entomology, Smithsonian Inst., March 20, 1992 $b (Malachiidae valid)

670 $a E-mail from Wash. State Parks & Rec. Commission $b (official name is Saint Edward State Park)

670 $a E-mail from M. Stone, webmaster of Eurofighter Typhoon WWW site, Nov. 2, 1999 $b (Eurofighter Typhoon and Eurofighter 2000 are same aircraft; Eurofighter Typhoon is the new name)

670 $a Letter from D. Hanna, Olympia Parks, Recreation and Cultural Services Dept. $b (with the exception of one city block, Heritage Park is under the management of the Wash. Dept. of General Administration. Phase 1 of the park was constructed in 1998. The City of Olympia completed Phase 1 of its share of Heritage Park in 1996. This includes Heritage Fountain; eventually the City will acquire and construct an entire city block that will link Heritage Park to Percival Landing (another city park).)
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

675: Source Data Not Found

The 675 field contains citations to sources searched in which no information supporting or relevant to the heading and/or its references is found. Both indicators in 675 are blank. This field is not repeatable and only subfield $a$ is valid. Citations to multiple sources are recorded in a single 675 in separate subfield $a$'s separated by semicolons (see examples below).

Examples:

675  $a$ GEOnet, Apr. 5, 2000

675  $a$ Perrot, J. Les langues dans le monde ancien et moderne, 1981

675  $a$ Washington place names database, via WWW, Nov. 11, 1999

675  $a$ Web. geog.; $a$ Columbia gaz.


675  $a$ Dictionnaire de la préhistoire, c1988; $a$ Archaeo. atlas of the world, 1975; $a$ Larousse encyclopedia of archaeology, 1972
680: General Public Notes (Scope Notes)

The 680 field contains a note that provides general information about a 1XX heading for which a specialized note field has not been defined. The note is written in a form suitable for public display in online catalogs. In subject authority records, the 680 field is used most commonly for scope notes. Scope notes generally serve to limit the scope of a heading as used in the catalog, helping catalog users determine whether the heading is appropriate for the materials they seek, and enabling catalogers to maintain consistency in the way headings are assigned. Scope notes are also used to provide explanations or definitions for new concepts or unfamiliar terminology. SCM H 400 provides instructions on the types of scope notes used in subject authority records.

When scope notes are used to distinguish the meaning and/or usage of two or more headings, the same information is supplied in a stylized manner under each heading. Scope notes of this type are termed "mirror image" scope notes. Several examples of mirror image scope notes are shown below.

The indicator positions are both blank. Subfield $i contains explanatory text exclusive of any heading(s) cited in the note, which are included in subfield $a.

Examples:

100 1 $a McCartney, Paul $x Death hoax
680 $i Here are entered works on the rumored death of Beatles member Paul McCartney in 1969.

150 $a Dilrubā music
680 $i Here are entered compositions not in a specific form or of a specific type for solo dilrubā, and collections of compositions in several forms or types for solo dilrubā.

150 $a Telephone slamming
680 $i Here are entered works on the unauthorized transfer of an individual's long distance telephone service from one provider to another.

151 $a Gaeltacht (Ireland)
680 $i Here are entered works on areas of Ireland where the primary spoken language is Irish.

Mirror Image Scope Notes

130 0 $a Bible $x In motion pictures
680 $i Here are entered works on Biblical themes in motion pictures that are not themselves Bible films. Motion picture versions of Biblical stories are entered under $a Bible films.
150 $a Bible films
680 $i Here are entered motion picture versions of Biblical stories. Works on Biblical themes in motion pictures that are not themselves Bible films are entered under $a Bible--In motion pictures.

-----------------------

150 $a Civilization, Turkic
680 $i Here are entered works on the civilization of the Turkic peoples of Asia treated collectively. Works on the civilization of Turkey are entered under $a Turkey--Civilization.

150 $a Turkey $x Civilization
680 $i Here are entered works on the civilization of Turkey. Works on the civilization of the Turkic peoples of Asia treated collectively are entered under $a Civilization, Turkic.

-----------------------

150 $a Educational videos
680 $i Here are entered video recordings intended for teaching and informational purposes, especially those made for classroom viewing. Video recordings designed to impart skills or techniques to general audiences, typically in a "how-to" manner, are entered under $a Instructional videos. $i Works on the use of video tapes in education are entered under $a Video tapes in education.

150 $a Instructional videos
680 $i Here are entered video recordings designed to impart skills or techniques to general audiences, typically in a "how-to" manner. Video recordings intended for teaching and informational purposes, especially those made for classroom viewing, are entered under $a Educational videos. $i Works on the use of video tapes in education are entered under $a Video tapes in education.

150 $a Video tapes in education
680 $i Here are entered works on the use of video tapes in education. Video recordings intended for teaching and informational purposes, especially those made for classroom viewing, are entered under $a Educational videos. $i Video recordings designed to impart skills or techniques to general audiences, typically in a "how-to" manner, are entered under $a Instructional videos.
681: Subject Example Tracing Note

This field contains a note that documents the use of a 1XX established subject or authorized subdivision heading as an example or reference in a 260 Complex See Reference, 360 Complex See Also Reference, or 680 General Public Note (Scope Note) in another authority record. Its purpose is to be able to identify and update the 260, 360, or 680 field when the 1XX heading is changed.

SACO contributors are not responsible for including this field in proposals. SHed staff in CPSO will add them as necessary. SACO participants should however be alert for the presence of 681 fields when making proposals to revise 1XX fields in subject authority records, as this means that the 260, 360, and/or 680 fields on other authority records will also need to be changed.

Both indicators in 681 are blank. The heading referred to is included in subfield $a. The explanatory text is put in subfield $i.

Examples:

150 $a Human-animal relationships
360 $i subdivision $a Effect of human beings on $i under individual animals and groups of animals, e.g. $a Fishes--Effect of human beings on

150 $a Nature $x Effect of human beings on
360 $i subdivision $a Effect of human beings on $i under individual animals and groups of animals, e.g. $a Fishes--Effect of human beings on

150 $a Fishes $x Effect of human beings on
681 $i Example under $a Human-animal relationships; Nature--Effect of human beings on

-------------------------

150 $a Motion pictures, Chinese
680 $i Here are entered works on motion pictures produced by Chinese film companies and shown outside China. General works on motion pictures shown in China or produced by Chinese film companies are entered under $a Motion pictures--China.
681 $i Note under $a Motion pictures--China

150 $a Motion pictures $z China
680 $i Here are entered general works on motion pictures shown in China or produced by Chinese film companies. Works on motion pictures produced by Chinese film companies and shown outside of China are entered under $a Motion pictures, Chinese.
681 $i Note under $a Motion pictures, Chinese
$a Textbooks

$si subdivision $a Textbooks $si under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, under titles of sacred works, and under topical headings; also subdivision $a Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.] $si under headings for religious education of individual religions, e.g. $a Christian education--Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.]; $si and subdivision $a Textbooks for foreign speakers $si under individual languages, e.g. $a English language--Textbooks for foreign speakers

$si Here are entered works discussing religious education textbooks. Individual religious education textbooks are entered under headings for religious education of individual religions, with subdivision $a Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.], $si e.g. $a Christian education--Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.].

$si Here are entered individual Christian education textbooks. Works discussing Christian education textbooks are entered under $a Christian education--Textbooks.

$si Example under $a Textbooks; $si and under reference from $a Religious education--Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.]

$si Notes under $a Christian education--Textbooks; Religious education--Textbooks

$si Here are entered works discussing Christian education textbooks. Individual Christian education textbooks are entered under headings of the type $a Christian education--Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.].

$si Note under $a Christian education--Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.]
682: Deleted Heading Note

This field contains text that explains why a subject authority record has been deleted. The field may also contain replacement headings. SCM H 193 provides instructions to LC catalogers on how to propose the deletion of a subject authority record. H 193.5 provides a list of the standard cancellation notes used in 682. SACO libraries may propose deletions by using the change proposal form and adding a 682 note from the list in H 193.5. If the heading is deleted because it is covered by another subject heading, it is usually necessary to make an accompanying change proposal to add the deleted heading as a used for reference on that other heading. Justifying sources should be cited as 670s in the change proposal.

Both indicators in 682 are blank. Explanatory text goes into subfield $i and any replacement headings in the note are given in subfield $a.

Examples:

150 $a Flying phalangers
682 $i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is covered by the subject heading $a Gliders (Mammals) $i (sh 86002596).

150 $a Polkas (Band)
682 $i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is covered by the subject headings $a Polkas $i (sh 85104482) and $a Band music $i (sh 85011470).

150 $a Stanley Cup (Hockey)
682 $i This authority record has been deleted because the subject heading is covered by an identical name heading (n 99056320).

150 $a Bern Disputation, Bern, Switzerland, 1528
682 $i This authority record has been deleted because the subject heading is covered by the name heading $a Bern Disputation (1528) $i (no 94009378).
**MARC Authority Format for Subjects**

**781: Subdivision Heading Linking Entry--Geographic Subdivision**

When an authority record is created for a geographic entity (151 heading), the 781 field specifies the form of the heading when used as a geographic subdivision. All new SACO proposals for geographic entities should have either a 781 showing the prescribed form of geographic subdivision, or a 667 stating that that heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision (see p. 133). SCM H 836 provides detailed guidance on when to include a 781 field and how to code it properly. Catalogers unsure of the prescribed form of geographic subdivision should follow the instructions in SCM H 830.

The first indicator is always blank (undefined) and the second indicator should be 0 (indicating LCSH). Subfield $z$ is the only subfield used in 781. A geographic subdivision may consist of one or two subfield $z$’s depending on the nature of the heading (see SCM H 830).

Examples:

151 $a Granite Mountains (Wyo.)
781 0 $z Wyoming $z Granite Mountains

151 $a Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.)
781 0 $z Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.)

151 $a Midea (Extinct city)
781 0 $z Greece $z Midea (Extinct city)

151 $a Undara Volcano (Qld.)
781 0 $z Australia $z Undara Volcano (Qld.)

151 $a Kinabalu, Mount (Sabah)
781 0 $z Malaysia $z Kinabalu, Mount (Sabah)

151 $a Ngum River (Xiangkhoang Province and Viangchan Prefecture, Laos)
781 0 $z Laos $z Ngum River (Xiangkhoang Province and Viangchan Prefecture)

151 $a Sylvan Lake (Alta. : Lake)
781 0 $z Alberta $z Sylvan Lake (Lake)

151 $a May Creek (King County, Wash. : Creek)
781 0 $z Washington (State) $z May Creek (King County : Creek)
952: Local Notes

The 952 field is a local note field that is used to cite a pattern used for the creation of a new heading or to cite sections within the *Subject Cataloging Manual* that provide instructions on how a heading and its references should be formulated. It is also used to provide nondisplaying permanent notes in authority records. This field is maintained in the records residing in the LCSH Master Database at LC. Because it is not included in subject authority records distributed by CDS, it will not be present in authority records viewed in utilities such as OCLC.

Both indicators in 952 fields are blank.

SCM H 202 provides further information on when catalogers should cite a pattern.

Examples:

```
130 0 $a Bhagavadgītā $x Relation to the Bible
952 $a LC pattern: Koran--Relation to the Bible

150 $a Asian American legislators
952 $a LC pattern: Hispanic American legislators; Asian American lawyers

150 $a Dramatists, Vietnamese
952 $a LC pattern: Dramatists, Thai

150 $a Wetland restoration
952 $a LC pattern: Watershed restoration
```

Another major use of 952 is to cite the *Subject Cataloging Manual*. SCM H 200 states: "If the heading and/or its reference structure is being established according to a pattern prescribed in a specific instruction sheet in the *Subject Cataloging Manual*, add a 952 field containing the number of the instruction sheet. Use the abbreviation SCM." In the example below, the 952 points to the instruction sheet in the SCM entitled "Buildings and Other Structures."

```
110 2 $a 19th Police Precinct Station House (New York, N.Y.)
952 $a SCM H 1334
```

The subject authority proposal form on the Web has a box labeled “LC pattern or SCM instruction sheet” in which to input the two types of local notes discussed above.

Field 952 has several other uses. It can be used to record other information that might be useful to the editorial approval process or for future reference. LC staff also use it to record the number of bibliographic records that will need to be changed if a proposal is approved (supplying this number is not required of SACO participants, but if LCCNs of bibliographic records needing changes are identified in the course of doing authority
research, it would be helpful to provide that information with the proposal). The subject authority proposal form on the Web has a box labeled “LC bib. records to be changed” if participants wish to determine and supply this count. LCCNs of records needing BFM can be given in the comments box.

When a heading is supposed to be established in the vernacular language, but the vernacular form cannot be found either in the work being cataloged or in readily available sources, the heading is established in the form known to the cataloger, but the authority record will be coded as provisional in fixed field 008/33. SCM H 1334, "Buildings and Other Structures," instructs catalogers creating a new authority in such cases to add a 952 field with the word "Provisional." (This note should be included in the comments box on the subject authority proposal Web form). Similar procedures should be followed whenever a heading is supposed to be established in the vernacular. If the vernacular form becomes known at a later date, the heading on the provisional authority record should be changed.

Example:

151 $a Pirin National Park (Bulgaria)
451 $a Vikhren National Park (Bulgaria)
550 $w g $a National parks and reserves $z Bulgaria
670 $a UNESCO World Heritage sites home page, July 19, 1999 $b (Pirin National Park, 41°40′N 22°50′E; est. 1963 as Vikhren National Park, enlarged and renamed Pirin National Park in 1976)
675 $a GEOnet, July 19, 1999; $a Times atlas
781 0 $z Bulgaria $z Pirin National Park
952 $a Provisional

Field 952 may also be used to record informational notes to persons such as SACO staff at LC and SACO mentors who will be reviewing the proposal. For example, if a classification proposal is made that is related to a subject heading proposal and the subject heading is being submitted via the Web proposal form while the classification proposal has been submitted through Classification Web or faxed to the Cooperative Cataloging Team, make a 952 note on the subject proposal to alert the Coop Team liaison receiving the subject proposal that there is also a classification proposal that needs to be submitted to CPSO at the same time. Examples:

952 $a Classification proposal entered in Class. Web on Feb. 14, 2007
952 $a Classification proposal faxed to Coop on 29 May 2007

The 952 field is not intended for notes to reviewers to justify the heading proposed. The choice and form of heading selected should be clear from the sources cited in 670 fields and should need no further explanation.
When a subject proposal requires two or more different kinds of local notes, give them in separate 952 fields:

053 0 $a SF293.N67
150 $a North Swedish horse
952 $a LC pattern: Clydesdale horse
952 $a Classification proposal entered in Class. Web on Jan. 2, 2007

In the above example, the first 952 note would be input on the subject authority proposal Web form in the box labeled “LC pattern or SCM instruction sheet,” while the second 952 note would be entered in the box for comments.
MARC Authority Format for Subjects

953: Cataloger Code

This is a local field used in the LCSH Master Database at LC. The field contains alphanumeric codes for catalogers and editors at LC. Subfield $a contains the code for the original proposer or creator of the record and subfield $b holds the code for the person who last revised the record. The Cooperative Cataloging Team's code (yz00) is used in records for headings proposed or revised through SACO.
Subject Heading Change Proposals
When to Make a Change Proposal

Change proposals are made for a variety of reasons. Probably the most common reason is to add additional cross-references from unused forms to the authorized subject heading (examples A-C below). In the course of cataloging an item, the cataloger may identify variant terms that would be useful to have in the authority file and in the printed LCSH.

Other reasons to make change proposals:

• the authorized form of heading is determined to be obsolete or no longer in common use and has been replaced by some other term (example F). Current sources such as dictionaries, thesauri, indexes, and other works can be cited to demonstrate that this is the case.

• the name of a geographic place or other named entity (e.g., buildings; awards) has changed. For example, in 1994 Death Valley National Monument became Death Valley National Park, requiring a change in the authorized form of heading. Similarly, in 2003 the American Library Association’s Gay, Lesbian, Bisexual, and Transgendered Book Award changed its name to the Stonewall Book Awards, necessitating a change in LCSH as well.

• to differentiate a previously unique heading that is now ambiguous or non-unique. The heading Lucy (Fictitious character) was established in 1996 for a character in poems by William Wordsworth. In 2000, the heading Van Pelt, Lucy (Fictitious character) was established, with a used for reference from Lucy (Fictitious character : Schulz). In 2003 and 2005, the headings Lucy (Fictitious character : Hughes) and Lucy (Fictitious character : Jungman) were established. To eliminate any potential confusion, the 1996 heading was changed to Lucy (Fictitious character : Wordsworth).

• the authorized heading was created according to earlier subject practices and is no longer the correct form under current practices. For example, the current practice (SCM H 1332) is to establish common names of individual species of animals and plants in the singular form and any higher level groupings such as genus, family, order, class, etc., in the plural form (e.g., Grizzly bear vs. Bears). However, there are still many examples of individual species set up in the plural form, and a proposal could be submitted to change a heading to the singular form to conform with current practice. Another example occurs when a species or group established in the Latin (scientific) form of name is determined to have an unambiguous common English-language name. Since current practice (SCM H 1332) is to prefer the common name, catalogers could submit a change proposal in such a case (example H).

• to change, correct, or add broader or related terms (examples D, E, K). A new heading might be created that belongs as the BT on already existing headings. A change to an authorized form of heading would also require changes on all other records that used the previous authorized form as a BT or RT. If a new heading is
When to Make a Change Proposal

created with a related term reference, the reciprocal reference must also be made on the existing heading.

• to correct or add a classification number (field 053) to a heading (examples I-J)

• to correct, change, add, or delete a qualifier in a heading. The heading **Pinhook Swamp (Ga.)** was originally established based on inadequate information. This swamp is actually located in both Florida and Georgia, so a proposal was made to change it to **Pinhook Swamp (Fla. and Ga.)**. In 1999, Canada’s Northwest Territories split into two territories. Northwest Territories kept its name. The newly formed territory is named Nunavut. All subject headings for places that used (N.W.T.) as a geographic qualifier that are now part of Nunavut had to be changed (e.g., **Baffin Island (N.W.T.)** was changed to **Baffin Island (Nunavut)**).

• to add or change a scope note on an existing authority. For example, the heading **Family** lacked a scope note until 2005, when a SACO proposal was approved to add a scope note that made it clear that the heading was used for works on the sociological concept and structure of the family and also for works on the everyday life, interactions, and relationships of family members. Sometimes, the creation of a new subject heading requires the addition or change of a scope note on another heading. For example, when the heading **Helplines** was established, a scope note distinguishing it from the already established heading **Hotlines (Counseling)** was included on both authority records.

• to authorize a heading for geographic subdivision (see SCM H 194 and H 364 sec. 4). Although the heading **Death** has been in existence for a long time, it was only authorized for geographic subdivision in 2005 on weekly list 38.

• to correct MARC tagging of fields or subfields within authority records
LCSH Subject Change Proposal Form

Refer to LC Subject Heading Change Guidelines for guidance in filling in this form.
Write to SACO@loc.gov for questions, follow-up, etc.

Note: Use dollar sign to denote a delimiter before a subfield code (e.g., $a); copy diacritics from list and paste following letter over which diacritic should appear (e.g., Kama(macron)niche, Me(acute)doc)

010 LCCN of record to be changed: ________________________ e.g., sh200101234 (do not include hyphens)
040 MARC 21 identification code: ________________________ (not utility code)
- Change ◆ Add ◆ Delete 053:

1XX heading on existing record

Change 1XX to:

- Change ◆ Add ◆ Delete 4xx:
- Change ◆ Add ◆ Delete 4xx:
- Change ◆ Add ◆ Delete 4xx:
- Change ◆ Add ◆ Delete 5xx:
- Change ◆ Add ◆ Delete 5xx:
- Change ◆ Add ◆ Delete 5xx:

Note: When adding 5XX RT, please note in comments box below.

Add 670; use dollar sign before subfield; copy diacritics from list and paste after affected letter (e.g., Kama(macron)niche)

Add 670

Add 670

- Change ◆ Add ◆ Delete 680: Scope note:

- Change ◆ Add ◆ Delete 781:
- Change ◆ Add ◆ Delete 667:

Comments: additional 053s, 4xxs, 670s, etc.:

Submitted by: ________________________
Institution: ________________________
LC SUBJECT HEADING CHANGE GUIDELINES

These instructions are to be used when filling in the LCSH Subject Change Proposal Form found on the SACO home page.

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: 

- Enter the institution's MARC 21 code (formerly NUC symbol or USMARC code). Do not use the institution's OCLC code.

Record Control Number 010: sh_____________________

- Enter the subject authority record control number as it is found in the 010 field of the authority record.

Geographic subdivision 008/06 _______ i = May Subd Geog

- If the heading should be divided geographically, enter an X. If unable to determine this or if the heading should not be divided geographically, do nothing to this field (cf. SCM H 194 and H 364). If using the Web change proposal form, indicate the proposed change in geographic subdivision practice in the comments box.

Library of Congress Classification Number 053: change: _____ add: _____ delete: ______

- If the change involves adding a number to an existing authority record, indicate the number in the area provided.
- If the change involves modification of an existing number, indicate the correction in this area.
- If the change involves deleting a number, indicate that number in the area provided. For further guidance on when to add, delete or change the 053 field, refer to SCM H 196.
- For guidance on when to assign and when not to assign a number to a heading, refer to SCM H 365.

CHANGE OF HEADING

1XX: change to: _______________________________________________________________

- Indicate the new form of heading in this area.
NOTE: Because changing the 1XX field of a subject heading may involve significant work on maintenance of the bibliographic and authority files both at the Library of Congress, and in other libraries, a cataloger should consider the impact of such a change and be judicious in recommending one. Changing the 1XX field of a subject heading means also changing all occurrences of that subject heading in other authority records (e.g., use as BT references, appearance in scope notes, use with subdivisions, etc.). Changing the 1XX field of a subject heading must be supported by adequate, appropriate authority research demonstrating clear preference for the proposed form. Cite references in separate 670s. When in doubt, contact the Cooperative Cataloging Team at: saco@loc.gov.

Changes to Cross-References

4XX: change: _______ 4XX: add: _______ 4XX: delete: _______

- Indicate references to be added, changed, or deleted in the area provided.
- For further guidance on how references should be constructed and in which form, refer to SCM H 195 and H 373.
- Please cite sources in separate 670 fields for each additional UF reference.

Broader Term (BT) & Related Term (RT) References

5XX: change: _______ 5XX: add: _______ 5XX: delete: _______

- Indicate broader term and related term references to be added, changed, or deleted.
- For further guidance on how to change a BT for a subject heading, refer to SCM H 195.
- For further guidance on how to determine an appropriate BT and on how to determine if headings qualify to be related term references, refer to SCM H 370.

Source Citations 670: add: _______________________________________________________

- Include in this area, citations to reference works and information to justify the heading or references being added, changed, or deleted.
- For further guidance, refer to SCM H 200, H 202, and H 203.

Scope Notes 680: add: __________________________________________________________

- Include in this area the text of a note to define or limit the use of a particular heading.
- For further guidance on drafting a scope note, refer to SCM H 400.

Geographic Subdivision 781: change: ___________ add: ____________ delete: __________

- For a geographic heading, include, if appropriate, the prescribed form of geographic subdivision for the heading.
- For guidance on when to include a 781 field and how to formulate geographic subdivisions, refer to SCM H 836 and H 830.
Nonpublic General Note 667: change: ___________ add: ____________ delete: ____________

- When the 781 field is not appropriate for a heading coded 151 (e.g., when the heading is a celestial body or a geographic entity in a city; cf. SCM H 836) supply a 667 field with this note: *This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.*

Comments; additional 053s, 4XXs, 670s, etc.:

- Use this box for brief general comments to reviewers of the proposal as well as for additional changes to the subject authority record that there is no other space for on the form.
Examples of Subject Heading Change Proposals

Examples A-C: Adding cross-references (used for references)

The examples below illustrate proposals to add one or more cross-references from unused terms to an authorized subject heading along with at least one justifying citation. The addition of alternative terms (synonyms in most cases) helps both catalogers and catalog users find materials by referring them to the authorized heading.

Example A

Authority Record Before

010 $a sh 88004778
040 $a DLC $c DLC $d DLC
150 $a Fast growing trees
550 $w g $a Fast growing plants
550 $w g $a Trees
670 $a LC database, July 28, 1988 $b (fast-growing pines, fast-growing plantation wood species, fast growing trees species, fast-growing species, fast-growing acacias, fast growing timber trees)
675 $a Web. 3; $a Random House; $a Biol. & agr. index; $a Forest term.; $a Term. forest sci.

Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU
Record Control Number 010: sh 88004778

Changes to Cross-References:
450: add: Quick growing trees

Source Citations:

Authority Record After

010 $a sh 88004778
040 $a DLC $c DLC $d DLC $d WaU
150 $a Fast growing trees
450 $a Quick growing trees
550 $w g $a Fast growing plants
550 $w g $a Trees
670 $a Work cat.: Lakho, A.G. Growth and management of fast growing tree species
Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples

in Sind, 1983.
670 $a LC database, July 28, 1988 $b (fast-growing pines, fast-growing plantation wood species, fast growing trees species, fast-growing species, fast-growing acacias, fast growing timber trees)
670 $a Report to the Government of the Yemen Arab Republic on afforestation and quick-growing tree species, 1974.
675 $a Web. 3; $a Random House; $a Biol. & agr. index; $a Forest term.; $a Term. forest sci.

Example B

Authority Record Before

010 $a sh 85075551
040 $a DLC $c DLC
150 $a Lease or buy decisions
450 $a Buy or lease decisions
450 $a Lease-purchase decisions
450 $a Purchase or lease decisions
550 $w g $a Finance
550 $a Leases
550 $a Purchasing

Change Proposal Submitted to Saco

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaElC
Record Control Number 010: sh 85075551

Changes to Cross-References:
4XX: add: Buy versus lease decisions
    add: Lease/buy decisions
    add: Lease or purchase decisions
    add: Lease versus buy decisions
    add: Lease vs. buy decisions

Source Citations:

Authority Record After

010 $a sh 85075551
040 $a DLC $c DLC $d WaElC
150 $a Lease or buy decisions
450 $a Buy or lease decisions
450 $a Buy versus lease decisions
450 $a Lease/buy decisions
450 $a Lease or purchase decisions
Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples

450 $a Lease-purchase decisions
450 $a Lease versus buy decisions
450 $a Lease vs. buy decisions
450 $a Purchase or lease decisions
550 $w g $a Finance
550 $a Leases
550 $a Purchasing
670 $a Pritchard, R.E. The lease/buy decision, 1980.
670 $a Madura, J. The lease vs. buy decision for land, 1985.

Example C

Authority Record Before

010 $a sh 92003216
040 $a DGPO $c DLC $d DLC
151 $a Snohomish River (Wash.)
550 $w g $a Rivers $z Washington (State)
670 $a Lippincott
670 $a Web. geog.
675 $a Nat. Geog. atlas

Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU
Record Control Number 010: sh 92003216

Changes to Cross-References:
4XX: add: Sdoh-doh-hohbsh River (Wash.)
       add: Sinahomis River (Wash.)
       add: Sinnahamis River (Wash.)
       add: Tuxpam River (Wash.)

Source Citations:
670: add: GNIS, July 13, 2000 $b (Snohomish River, stream, Wash., Snohomish Co., variant names: Sdoh-doh-hohbsh River, Sinahomis River, Sinnahamis River, Tuxpam River; Tuxpam River also a variant name for Stillaguamish River)

781: add: $z Washington (State) $z Snohomish River
### Authority Record After

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>010</td>
<td>$a sh 92003216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>040</td>
<td>$a DGPO Sc DLC $d DLC $d WaU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151</td>
<td>$a Snohomish River (Wash.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451</td>
<td>$a Sdoh-doh-hohbsh River (Wash.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451</td>
<td>$a Sinahomis River (Wash.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451</td>
<td>$a Sinnahamis River (Wash.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451</td>
<td>$a Tuxpam River (Wash.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
<td>$w g $a Rivers $z Washington (State)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>670</td>
<td>$a Lippincott</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>670</td>
<td>$a Web. geog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>670</td>
<td>$a GNIS, July 13, 2000 $b (Snohomish River, stream, Wash., Snohomish Co., variant names: Sdoh-doh-hohbsh River, Sinahomis River, Sinnahamis River, Tuxpam River; Tuxpam River also a variant name for Stillaguamish River)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>675</td>
<td>$a Nat. Geog. atlas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>781</td>
<td>0 $z Washington (State) $z Snohomish River</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples

Example D: Adding a see also related term reference

This example shows the addition of a related term reference. In this particular case, a library makes a proposal for a new subject heading, Exploitation films (see example in Appendix A, p. 268), and on that record it includes Sensationalism in motion pictures as a related heading. Since related term references must be made reciprocally, the library also turns in a change proposal to have Exploitation films added as a related heading on the record for Sensationalism in motion pictures.

Authority Record Before

010 $a sh 85120039
040 $a DLC $c DLC $d DLC
053  0 $a PN1995.9.S284
150 $a Sensationalism in motion pictures
550 $w g $a Motion pictures

Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: CSt
Record Control Number 010: sh 85120039

Changes to Cross-References:
Broader Term (BT) & Related Term (RT) References:
5XX: add: (RT) Exploitation films

Authority Record After

010 $a sh 85120039
040 $a DLC $c DLC $d DLC $d CSt
053  0 $a PN1995.9.S284
150 $a Sensationalism in motion pictures
550 $w g $a Motion pictures
550 $a Exploitation films
Example E: Adding a broader term reference

This proposal shows the addition of a broader term, with the control subfield $w$ coded with the value g, which distinguishes it from related terms, where no control subfield is present.

In this case, when the heading Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.) was established, the range of which those mountains are a part, the Ozark Mountains, was not included as a broader term. Another library examining the record realizes that this BT is needed and submits a proposal to add it.

Authority Record Before

010 $a sh 00002503
040 $a InU $b eng $c DLC
151 $a Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.)
550 $w g $a Mountains $z Arkansas
550 $w g $a Mountains $z Oklahoma
670 $a GNIS, Nov. 24, 1999 $b (Boston Mountains, Arkansas; range; 93°20'30"W, 35°42'44"N; 93°30'01"W, 35°42'44"N)
670 $a Lippincott $b (Boston Mountains, most rugged part of the Ozarks, mostly in NW Ark., with parts in NE Okla.)
670 $a Web. geog. $b (Boston Mountains, ridge in Ozark Plateau in NW Arkansas)
781 0 $z Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.)

Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU
Record Control Number 010: sh 00002503

Change to Cross-References:
Broader Term (BT) & Related Term (RT) References:
5XX: add: (BT) Ozark Mountains

Note: In this particular instance, an additional 670 source citation is not needed, because the existing citations in the authority record already document that the Boston Mountains are part of the Ozarks.

Authority Record After

010 $a sh 00002503
040 $a InU $b eng $c DLC $d WaU
151 $a Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.)
550 $w g $a Mountains $z Arkansas
550 $w g $a Mountains $z Oklahoma
551 $w g $a Ozark Mountains
670 $a Work cat.: McBane, R.A. Ouachita Mountain, Arkansas Valley, and Boston
Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples

Mountain sections, 1972.
670 $a$GNIS, Nov. 24, 1999 $b$ (Boston Mountains, Arkansas; range; 93°20'30"W, 35°42'44"N; 93°30'01"W, 35°42'44"N)
670 $a$Lippincott $b$ (Boston Mountains, most rugged part of the Ozarks, mostly in NW Ark., with parts in NE Okla.)
670 $a$Web. geog. $b$ (Boston Mountains, ridge in Ozark Plateau in NW Arkansas)
781 0 $z$Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.)
Examples F-H: Changing the authorized form of heading

These examples show proposals to change the authorized (1XX) form of a heading. The old form of heading is moved to a cross-reference (4XX) with the control subfield Sw coded with value nne to show that the term was once the established form. One must also remember that when a 1XX is changed, if the heading in the 1XX is used as a 5XX reference on other records, then the 5XX on the other record(s) must also be changed to the new form. In addition, any headings that include the earlier established form (e.g., in a phrase heading, as a qualifier, or as a subdivision) must be examined and likely will need to be changed at the same time.

Note that in cases where the 1XX is being changed, the presence of an 053 in the record is an indication that the same terminology may appear in the classification caption under that number. Libraries that use LCC should check the classification caption and, if necessary, submit an accompanying proposal to update it.

Example F

In this example, it is determined that the currently accepted form of name for a Native American Indian tribe differs from the authorized form. Because the currently accepted name of the tribe is a cross-reference in the existing authority record, a proposal to switch the 1XX and 4XX is needed in this case. The library can include the control subfield in the proposal or it can simply indicate that it is needed by adding in brackets "[earlier established form]," as was done in this example.

Authority Record Before

010 $a sh 85040175
040 $a DLC $c DLC $d DLC
053 0 $a E99.D9
150 $a Dwamish Indians
450 $a Duwamish Indians
550 $w g $a Coast Salish Indians
550 $w g $a Indians of North America $z Washington (State)

Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU
Record Control Number 010: sh 85040175
1XX: change to: Duwamish Indians

Changes to Cross-References:
4XX: add: Dwamish Indians [earlier form of heading]
4XX: delete: Duwamish Indians
Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples

Source Citations:
670: add: Duwamish Tribe WWW home page, Sept. 10, 1999 $b (Duwamish)
   (Duwamish; one of the many Salishan tribes in the Puget Sound Area)
670: add: Native America in the twentieth century, 1994: $b p. 172 (Duwamish)
   72 (Duwamish (Coastal Division, Salishan))

Authority Record After

010 $a sh 85040175
040 $a DLC $c DLC $d DLC $d WaU
053 0 $a E99.D9
150 $a Duwamish Indians
450 $w nne $a Dwamish Indians
550 $w g $a Coast Salish Indians
550 $w g $a Indians of North America $z Washington (State)
670 $a Duwamish Tribe WWW home page, Sept. 10, 1999 $b (Duwamish)
   (Duwamish; one of the many Salishan tribes in the Puget Sound Area)
670 $a Native America in the twentieth century, 1994: $b p. 172 (Duwamish)
   72 (Duwamish (Coastal Division, Salishan))

Example G

This example shows a change proposal for a heading for a named entity that has changed
its name. The heading for this arts center was established in 1998 as Langston Hughes
Cultural Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.). In 2005, when the heading was needed again,
the cataloger discovered that the center had changed its name in 2001 to Langston
Hughes Performing Arts Center. A proposal was submitted to change the heading to
match the current name.

Authority Record Before

010 $a sh 98002644
040 $a WaU $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a Langston Hughes Cultural Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.)
410 2 $a Hughes Cultural Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.)
550 $w g $a Centers for the performing arts $z Washington (State)
670 $a A theater annex to the Langston Hughes Cultural Arts Center in Seattle, 1997.
670 $a US West dex Seattle metro white pages, April 1998 $b (Langston Hughes
   Cultural Arts Center)

Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU
Record Control Number 010: sh 98002644
1XX: change to: Langston Hughes Performing Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.)
Changes to Cross-References:
4XX: add: Langston Hughes Cultural Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.) [earlier form of heading]
4XX: add: Hughes Performing Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.)

Source Citations:
670: add: Seattle Parks & Recreation Dept. website, Sept. 22, 2005: $b centers and pools (Langston Hughes Performing Arts Center; operates as a cultural performing arts center under the Seattle Department of Parks and Recreation) history (housed in what was formerly the Jewish Synagogue of Chevra Bikur Cholim. The building is listed in the National Registry as a historical landmark)
670: add: Phone call to the Center, Sept. 22, 2005 $b (changed name in 2001)

Authority Record After

Example H

In this example, a heading for a group of plants established under its scientific name is changed to the common name for the group. LC policy (SCM H 1332) is to prefer a common name if it is in general use, is unambiguous, and is supported by various reference works and official lists of common names.

Authority Record Before
Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples

670 $a Web. 3.
670 $a Hortus 3.
670 $a Wyman's Gardening encyc.

Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU
Record Control Number 010: sh 87001925
1XX: change to: Monkshoods

Changes to Cross-References:
4XX: add: Aconitum [earlier form of heading]
4XX: add: Monkshood

Source Citations:
670: change: Web. 3 (aconite; Aconitum; monkshood)
670: add: Encarta world Eng. dict. $b (monkshood: plural -hood or -hoods)

Authority Record After

010 $a sh 87001925 $z sh 88022521
040 $a DLC $c DLC $d DLC $d WaU
053 0 $a QK495.R215 $c Botany
053 0 $a SB413.A25 $c Ornamental plants
150 $a Monkshoods
450 $a Aconites (Plants)
450 $w nne $a Aconitum
450 $a Monkshood
550 $w g $a Ranunculaceae
670 $a Web. 3 $b (aconite; Aconitum; monkshood)
670 $a Hortus 3.
670 $a Wyman's Gardening encyc.
670 $a GRIN taxonomy, via WWW, June 8, 2000 $b (Aconitum. Family: Ranunculaceae. Common name: aconite, monkshood)
670 $a PLANTS database, via WWW, June 8, 2000 $b (Aconitum. Common name: monkshood)
670 $a Encarta world Eng. dict. $b (monkshood: plural -hood or -hoods)
Examples I-J: Revising an 053 Field

These examples illustrate the correction of a classification range in the 053 field of an authority record, along with the addition of new cross-references. In some cases, an authority record may lack 053s and a library may wish to have one or more added. In the examples below, the classification schedule changed somewhat since the 053 was put in the authority records and upon noticing this discrepancy, a library can submit a proposal to change the 053 to bring it up to date with the classification. The 053 qualifier Zoology, which is included on all new headings for animals, is also added to older records if they are modified for other reasons.

While the examples below show a revision of the 053 field in combination with other changes, Saco proposals consisting of just an 053 addition or a change to an existing 053 field are also perfectly acceptable.

Example I

Authority Record Before

010 $a sh 85004598
040 $a DLC $c DLC $d DLC $d CSfA
053 0 $a QL641 $b QL669.3
150 $a Amphibians
450 $a Amphibia
550 $w g $a Vertebrates
550 $a Herpetology
670 $a Syn. class. liv. org.
670 $a Web. 3

Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU
Record Control Number 010: sh 85004598

Library of Congress Classification Number
053: change to: QL640-QL669.8 (Zoology)

Changes to Cross-References:
4XX: add: Herpetofauna
4XX: add: Herpetozoa
4XX: add: Herps
4XX: add: Herptiles

Source Citations:
670: add: LC database, Sept. 18, 2000 $b (titles: Herptile; herps; Herpetofauna)
670: add: OCLC, Sept. 18, 2000 $b (herptiles; Herpetozoa)
**Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples**

**Authority Record After**

010  $a sh 85004598  
040  $a DLC $c DLC $d DLC $d CsF $d WaU  
053 0 $a QL640 $b QL669.8 $c Zoology  
150  $a Amphibians  
450  $a Amphibia  
450  $a Batrachia  
450  $a Herpetofauna  
450  $a Herpetozoa  
450  $a Herps  
450  $a Herptiles  
550  $w g $a Vertebrates  
550  $a Herpetology  
670  $a Syn. class. liv. org.  
670  $a Web. 3.  
670  $a Ross, D.A. Amphibians and reptiles in the diets of North American raptors, 1991: $b t.p. (amphibians and reptiles (collectively, herptiles))  
670  $a LC database, Sept. 18, 2000 $b (titles: Herptile; herps; Herpetofauna)  
670  $a OCLC, Sept. 18, 2000 $b (herptiles; Herpetozoa)

**Example J**

**Authority Record Before**

010  $a sh 85112964  
040  $a DLC $c DLC $d DLC  
053 0 $a QL640 $b QL669.3  
150  $a Reptiles  
550  $w g $a Amniotes  
550  $w g $a Vertebrates  
550  $a Herpetology

**Change Proposal Submitted to Saco**

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU  
Record Control Number 010: sh 85004598  

Library of Congress Classification Number  
053: change to: QL640-QL669.8 (Zoology)

Changes to Cross-References:  
4XX: add: Herpetofauna  
4XX: add: Herpetozoa  
4XX: add: Herps  
4XX: add: Herptiles  
4XX: add: Reptilia
Source Citations:
670: add: LC database, Sept. 18, 2000 $b (titles: Herptile; herps; Herpetofauna)
670: add: OCLC, Sept. 18, 2000 $b (herptiles; Herpetozoa)

Authority Record After

010 $a sh 85112964
040 $a DLC $c DLC $d DLC $d WaU
053 0 $a QL640 $b QL669.8 $c Zoology
150 $a Reptiles
450 $a Herpetofauna
450 $a Herpetozoa
450 $a Herps
450 $a Herptiles
450 $a Reptilia
550 $w g $a Amniotes
550 $w g $a Vertebrates
550 $a Herpetology
670 $a Ross, D.A. Amphibians and reptiles in the diets of North American raptors, 1991: $b t.p. (amphibians and reptiles (collectively, herptiles))
670 $a LC database, Sept. 18, 2000 $b (titles: Herptile; herps; Herpetofauna)
670 $a OCLC, Sept. 18, 2000 $b (herptiles; Herpetozoa)
Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples

Example K: Revision of references

In this example, the three existing broader terms are not correct under current practice, since one would not make a broader term reference from a heading for a class of persons (Mayors) to a heading for a type of government. A check of the fixed fields of this authority record would show that the references on this record are unevaluated (value b in fixed field 008/29). In this case, the broader term heading, if there is an appropriate one, should also be for a class of persons. In addition, the first 053 on this record is corrected and the second two are deleted, since current practice is not to give classification numbers for specific localities (otherwise, an 053 could be added for every country). Source citations are added that justify the references retained on the record.

CPSO will recode the 008/29 from b to a in records with references that have been revised to conform to current stated policy in SCM H 370.

Authority Record Before

008/29 b
010  $a sh 85082436
040  $a DLC $c DLC $d DLC
053  0 $a JS143 $b JS163
053  0 $a JS356 $b JS365 $c United States
053  0 $a JS3155 $b JS3161 $c Great Britain
150  $a Mayors
450  $a Alcaldes
550  $w g $a Local government
550  $w g $a Municipal corporations
550  $w g $a Municipal government
550  $a Corregidors

Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU
Record Control Number 010: sh 85082436

Library of Congress Classification Number
053: change to: JS141 $b JS163
053: delete: JS356 $b JS365 $c United States
053: delete: JS3155 $b JS3161 $c Great Britain

Broader Term (BT) & Related Term (RT) References:
5XX: add: (BT) Municipal officials and employees
5XX: delete: Local government
5XX: delete: Municipal corporations
5XX: delete: Municipal government

Source Citations:
670: add: Amer. Heritage dict. of the Eng. lang., via WWW, Apr. 12, 2001 $b (alcalde: the mayor or chief judicial official of a Spanish town)
Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples

670: add: Encarta world Eng. dict., via WWW, Apr. 12, 2001 $b (alcalde, pl. alcaldes: mayor: the mayor or chief magistrate of a town in a Spanish-speaking area)
670: add: OED online, Apr. 12, 2001 $b (alcalde: A magistrate of a town, a sheriff or justice, in Spain and Portugal)
670: add: Web. 3 $b (alcalde: an administrative and judicial officer in villages, towns, or districts in Spain and regions under Spanish influence; corregidor: a Spanish magistrate; esp.: the chief magistrate or governor of a town in Spain or the Spanish colonies)
670: add: WordReference.com, Apr. 12, 2001: $b Spanish to English (alcalde: mayor; (juez) magistrate)

Authority Record After

008/29 a
010 $a sh 85082436
040 $a DLC $c DLC $d DLC $d WaU
053 0 $a JS141 $b JS163
150 $a Mayors
450 $a Alcaldes
550 $w g $a Municipal officials and employees
550 $a Corregidors
670 $a Amer. Heritage dict. of the Eng. lang., via WWW, Apr. 12, 2001 $b (alcalde: the mayor or chief judicial official of a Spanish town)
670 $a Encarta world Eng. dict., via WWW, Apr. 12, 2001 $b (alcalde, pl. alcaldes: mayor: the mayor or chief magistrate of a town in a Spanish-speaking area)
670 $a OED online, Apr. 12, 2001 $b (alcalde: A magistrate of a town, a sheriff or justice, in Spain and Portugal)
670 $a Web. 3 $b (alcalde: an administrative and judicial officer in villages, towns, or districts in Spain and regions under Spanish influence; corregidor: a Spanish magistrate; esp.: the chief magistrate or governor of a town in Spain or the Spanish colonies)
670 $a WordReference.com, Apr. 12, 2001: $b Spanish to English (alcalde: mayor; (juez) magistrate)
Classification
Why Submit Classification Proposals?

In much the same way that existing LC subject headings don't cover every topic on which a library may collect materials, the LC classification schedules have been developed to accommodate established disciplines and materials held in LC's collections. New disciplines and subdisciplines are constantly being developed and other libraries have very different collection development policies than the Library of Congress's. In a library using LCC, if the topic of a bibliographic resource does not have an explicit number in the classification schedules, the resource will likely be classified in a broader number, often the number in the schedule for "General works." This does a disservice to patrons looking for materials on a specific topic, since these materials will be mixed together with truly general materials and with other materials on other topics that also got lumped in the general number. Other materials on the same specific topic may end up classed in other numbers because no one number exists to gather these materials. By proposing a new number or range of numbers, SACO libraries help to better organize their library collections and provide a more finely developed framework within which to place new materials as they are acquired.

In areas of the schedules that instruct catalogers to Cutter alphabetically by topic A-Z, when a topic is not listed, many librarians simply use a Cutter for a broader term that is listed or else assign a Cutter that they create locally for the topic. A benefit of proposing such Cutters to be printed in LCC is that they will now be available for use by LC catalogers and other libraries. For libraries that rely heavily on copy cataloging and do not review every classification number, getting a Cutter established in LCC means that LC as well as other libraries will use the same number for a topic every time, helping to ensure a more uniform shelflist and making cataloging copy more reliable across libraries.

Terminology within a discipline changes over time, as does spelling of some technical terms. In the same way that change proposals for subject headings allow libraries to add cross-references or to change a heading to a more current form, classification change proposals allow libraries to keep the classification schedules up-to-date and to provide references in both the schedules and their indexes. In some areas, such as zoology and botany, taxonomic groups get renamed, merged with other groups, or even eliminated, and the LC classification should be modified to reflect currently accepted taxonomic standards.
Classification Proposals

The Subject Cataloging Manual: Classification (SCM:C) provides detailed instructions on LC’s classification policies and procedures. Catalogers should consult the SCM:C for detailed and up-to-date guidelines on establishing new classification numbers and on applying them to bibliographic resources. Instruction sheets in the SCM:C are numbered, and preceded with the letter F, e.g., F 275, Biography.

Proposals may be submitted for new classification numbers and for changes to existing numbers. A new proposal could consist of

- a Cutter number within an existing number,
- a single new number
- a range of numbers
- a completely new development within a schedule

Change proposals are most frequently made to alter an existing caption (the text that is next to, above, or below a number), to refer to other possible numbers, to make a number or numbers obsolete, and to provide cross-references from an unused term to a term used within a schedule.

In November 2006, a new online classification proposal system was instituted for subscribers to Classification Web. SACO participants who have Classification Web accounts are required to input classification proposals using Class Web. The Classification Web accounts for many institutions that contributed classification proposals prior to November 2006 have been enabled to use the new system. Institutions whose Classification Web accounts have not yet been enabled to use the system should contact the SACO Coordinator in the Cooperative Cataloging Team at LC.
Instructions on using the system, with examples, can be found on the SACO website at http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/ClassWeb/LCClassification.html. The site includes the following documentation:

- General instructions – Proposing a New Class Number
- General instructions – Proposing a Modification to an Existing Class Number
- General instructions – Proposing a New See Reference or Confer Note

There are also seven examples of common types of proposals and how to create them in the new system:

- Creating a New Cutter Number
- Creating a New Single Whole or Decimal Number
- Creating a New Development with Multiple Consecutive Lines
- Changing a Caption
- Changing the Indention of Existing Captions
- Parenthesizing a Number and Creating a See Reference
- Creating a Cf. Note

Participants using the online proposal system must notify the Cooperative Cataloging Team that a proposal has been submitted. Send an email to the SACO account (SACO@loc.gov) and include your name, the classification number(s) proposed, and the corresponding caption(s).

Proposals can only be seen when logged in to the classification proposal system. They will not display in the regular Classification Web system. New proposals display in green, while change proposals display in brown.
The illustration below shows a proposed new number SF293.N67 for North Swedish horse:

![Classification Proposal System]

The following illustration shows a change proposal to add an “including” note under F868.P85:

![Classification Proposal System]
Contributors may only modify or delete their own proposals. Once a proposal has been assigned to a weekly list, it can no longer be modified or deleted by anyone other than CPSO. An existing, approved number cannot be deleted by a SACO participant, but they may input a change proposal to parenthesize it or to modify the caption associated with it.

Once a proposal has been assigned to a weekly list, contributors will be notified, if and only if they have filled out the email address box in the online proposal form. Tentative (unapproved) classification weekly lists are available on the SACO website at http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/ClassTentative/twlc.html. Participants who have provided their email address will also be notified when a proposal has been approved, rejected, or approved with modifications by the editorial meeting. Approved classification weekly lists are available on the Cataloging and Acquisitions home page at http://www.loc.gov/aba/cataloging/classification/weeklylists/.

The illustrations below show a sample of the tentative and approved 2007 classification weekly list 5 for January 31, 2007.
Library of Congress Classification
Tentative (Unapproved) List 5 (January 31, 2007)

The full hierarchy is provided for new and revised classification captions to show their context within the classification. Numbers that appear in square brackets are not displayed in Classification Web browse screens or in the printed editions of the classification schedules. They are shown on this list only to indicate the location of the corresponding caption or reference within the classification. "(A)" indicates pre-approved proposals for material in priority 1. "(C)" indicates proposals submitted by libraries in the Subject Authority Cooperative Program (SACO).

SACO contributors:
Send questions or comments to your SACO Liaison on the Cooperative Cataloging Team.

Philosophy (General)
Modern (1450/1660-)
By region or country
Russia
By period
19th and 20th centuries
Special topics, A-Z
Names
Index
Names
Philosophy
Russian philosophy
19th and 20th centuries: B4235.N36

Judaism
Sources
Rabbinical literature
Special topics, A-Z
Index
Jeremiah
Index
Jeremiah
Rabbinical literature: BM496.9.J35

Christianity
Collected works
Early Christian literature, Fathers of the Church, etc.
Individual authors
Tertullian, ca. 160-ca. 220
Separate works, By title
De prescripturis haereticorum

The Bible
General
Works about the Bible
Topics (not otherwise provided for), A-Z
Aesthetics
Classification Proposals

Doctrinal theology
Mary, Mother of Jesus Christ. Mariology
Miracles. Apparitions. Shines, sanctuaries, images, processions, etc.
Special
Other, A-Z

BT660.H84
Pattern: Heroldsbach
(Germany)

Christian denominations
Lutheran churches
Other special, A-Z

BH3074.H87
Human rights
Index:

Human rights
Lutheran churches: BH3074.H87

(A)

Pentecostal churches:
Individual branches

BJ10737
Ya?riyop?ya qala ?eywat béta kerestiyán TABLE B13
Index:

History of Asia
Israel (Palestine). The Jews
Ethnography. Tribes of Israel
Other elements in the population, A-Z

DS113.8.A68
Austrian Jews
Index:
Austrian Jews in Israel: DS113.8.A68

Asia Minor
Ancient states, regions, cities, etc., A-Z

DS156.A64
Arykanda
Index:
Arykanda. DS156.A64

[GR316.7-.75]
GR316.7
General works
GR316.72.A-Z
Local, A-Z
GR316.75.A-Z
By ethnic group, A-Z

Industries, Land use, Labor
Special industries and trades
Miscellaneous industries and trades, A-Z

HD9999.C947-.C9474
Cultural industries TABLE H21
Index:
Cultural industries: HD9999 C947-.C9474

(C)
Classification Proposals

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CLASSIFICATION
WEEKLY LIST 05 (January 31, 2007)

The full hierarchy is provided for new and revised classification captions to show their context within the classification. Numbers that appear in square brackets are not displayed in Classification Web browse screens or the printed editions of the classification schedules. They are shown on this list only to indicate the location of the corresponding caption or reference within the classification.

Philosophy (General)
Modern (1450/1660-)
By region or country
Russia
By period
19th and 20th centuries
Special topics, A-Z
B4235.N36
Names

Judaism
Sources
Rabbinical literature
Special topics, A-Z
BM496.DJ35
Jeremiah (Biblical prophet)

Christianity
Collected works
Early Christian literature, Fathers of the Church, etc.
Individual authors
Tertullian, ca. 160-ca. 230
Separate works, By title
De praescriptione haereticorum
BR85.T366

The Bible
General
Works about the Bible
Topics (not otherwise provided for), A-Z
BS680.A33
Aesthetics

Doctrinal theology
Mary, Mother of Jesus Christ. Mariology
Miracles, Apparitions, Shrines, sanctuaries, images, processions, etc.
Special
Other, A-Z
BT660.H34
Heidee (Emsland, Germany)

Christian denominations
Lutheran churches
Other special, A-Z
BX8074.H87
Human rights

Pentecostal churches
Individual branches
BX9787
Ya’l’tyopya gala heywat be’ta keresbyan TABLE BX3

History of Asia
Israel (Palestine). The Jews
Ethnography, Tribes of Israel
Other elements in the population, A-Z
DS113.A88
Austrian Jews

Asia Minor
Ancient states, regions, cities, etc., A-Z
DS158.A84
Armenia
For those institutions that do not subscribe to Classification Web, the former paper-based proposal system may continue to be used. Guidelines for classification proposals are contained in SCM instruction sheet F 50. Proposals are made on a classification proposal form (see illustration, p. 188). The blank form can be copied as needed from this manual, and is also available on the SACO home page (http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/imgs/classification.gif). Basic instructions for filling out the form are also online (http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/classification.html); for complete instructions, catalogers should consult SCM F 50.

The proposal form may be filled out by typewriter or by hand. If a proposal is handwritten, use a pen or pencil that will fax well and be sure that the handwriting is clear and legible. Alternatively, one may download the GIF image of the form from the SACO home page and fill it out using a graphics editing program, such as Paintshop Pro or Adobe Photoshop. The completed form can then be printed out and faxed, or emailed, to SACO staff at LC.

There is also a PDF version of the classification proposal form available at http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/classification.pdf. Text may be typed into this form, but data entered cannot be saved; the form must be printed out and faxed to LC after it has been filled out.
## LC Classification Proposal Form

Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
<th>Pattern:</th>
<th>Better:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Number:</th>
<th>Decimal:</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Work Cat:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

For Classification Editorial Use:  
Weekly List No.:  
Quarterly No.:  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coop. Library Code:</th>
<th>Coop. Cat. Code:</th>
<th>CPSO Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Classification Proposals

The following areas or boxes on the classification proposal form are mandatory to fill in:

Class Letters

Enter the letter(s) of the LC classification schedule for which the proposal is being made, e.g., N, DJK, QH. If the proposal is for a table in one of the schedules, also give the specific table designation, e.g., Table P-PZ20.

Page

Fill this in only if using the most current printed classification schedules published by LC. Leave this box blank if some other version of the schedules is used that does not give the pagination found in the print LC version, e.g., Gale's *Super LCCS*.

No Book, Book, NOL, COOP

Circle COOP.

Pattern

This box is used to show an existing number or range of numbers on which the new proposal is patterned. Cite as patterns only developments that are identical or similar to the new proposal in (1) terminology of the caption(s) and (2) location of the caption(s) in relation to surrounding lines. For developments in classes D, H, Q, and R that follow the models for those schedules (see SCM F 195), enter "D model," "H model," etc.

If a proposal is not based on an existing pattern or model, leave this box blank.

Work Cat.

Give a citation to the work being cataloged that generated the classification proposal. Cite the main entry, title, and date of publication in the same way as it would be cited in a subject authority record. No additional information is necessary.

Coop. Library Code

Put the proposing library's MARC 21 organization code in this box.

Class Number; Decimal; Cutters, Captions, Notes

The body of the classification form has three columns:

- The first column, **Class Number**, is used for whole numbers.
- The second column, **Decimal**, is used for decimals, and also for Cutter numbers. This column is also called the "aisle."
Classification Proposals

- The third column, **Cutters, Captions, Notes**, is used for classification captions (the text that sits beside a number) and notes (e.g., "Class here" notes, "Including" notes, "Cf." (Confer) notes, "see" references).

SCM F 50 sec. 2 contains detailed instructions on how to format proposals for new numbers. The main concept that catalogers need to understand is the need to provide an **anchor point** so that it is clear where the new line or lines are to be located and aligned in relation to other numbers in the schedule. The anchor point is enclosed in square brackets and its caption can be abbreviated with the use of ellipses (...). An anchor point can be either above or below where the new line(s) are to be inserted into the schedule. Sometimes two anchor points are necessary, one to show alignment and one to show location. An example of this is given in the SCM.

The instructions for completing the classification form in SCM F 50 have become more and more obsolete now that all of the classification schedules have been converted to the MARC 21 classification format. The old form no longer fits with the appearance of the pages of the schedules. Catalogers using the paper form to make proposals for new numbers should try to fit the new style into the old form as best as they can. CPSO Classification Editorial Team staff are accustomed to adjusting proposals to fit the circumstances.

Most SACO proposals are made for new Cutter numbers within an existing classification. In the past, SACO participants were supposed to provide only the letter of the Cutter number when making a Cutter number proposal. CPSO’s Classification Editorial Team (CLED) assigned the actual number. Participants using both **Classification Web** and paper proposal forms are now expected to provide a complete Cutter number. CLED editors may alter a proposed number based on 1) the tables in SCM G 60 sec. 3; 2) the Cutter numbers that have already been used in LC’s shelflist within a given class number; and 3) judgment regarding what might need to be added to that number in the future. If a proposed number is altered, the SACO participant will see the revised number on the tentative and/or approved weekly lists.

**Other Boxes on the Classification Form**

The other boxes found on the classification proposal form (i.e., **Better**, **Weekly List No.**, **Quarterly No.**, **Coop. Cat. Code**, and **CPSO Notes**) are for the use of LC and may be left blank. The **Better** box will be filled in by Cooperative Cataloging Team staff. It is used to indicate the approximate number of existing bibliographic records in the LC catalog that would be better classified in the newly proposed number(s). Although existing records are not normally reclassified, LCC editorial staff use this number to judge the impact of the new proposal on LC’s shelflist. If a proposal would result in a great deal of disruption to an existing shelf arrangement, CPSO specialists consider whether the disruption is really worth doing, and if so, whether there would be a different way of achieving the same purpose that might preserve numbers in which significant amounts of material are already shelflisted.
The examples below illustrate SACO classification proposals for new whole numbers, for
decimal numbers, and for Cutter numbers, for the benefit of those SACO participants
who are not subscribers to Classification Web. Classification Web users should input
their proposals in the online system, following the procedures and examples available on
the SACO website (http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/ClassWeb/LCClassification.
html). Participants who use the online proposal system may also find the examples
below informative.

Changing or Cancelling Classification Numbers

Section 3 of SCM F 50 provides detailed information on how to propose changes and
cancellations to existing classifications. An asterisk is placed in front of an existing
classification number, caption, or note that is being changed or eliminated. Anchor
points are used the same way as they are in new classification proposals. For complex
changes, such as the cancellation of a line, a change in number or indentation, etc., a
parenthetical instruction is added below the line to be changed in order to provide a better
explanation of what change(s) are being proposed. Examples of change proposals for
participants who are not Classification Web subscribers are provided below. Participants
who use the Classification Web online proposal system may also find the examples
informative.
Classification Proposal Examples

Examples of Classification Proposals Using the Paper Proposal Form

The examples below illustrate the types of classification proposals that may be made by SACO libraries. Each example illustrates a particular type of proposal, with explanations provided when needed. The examples include before and after views of the particular classification schedule affected by the proposal, along with a graphic of the actual proposal. In the before and after views, vertical ellipses (\(\cdot\)) have been used to indicate parts of the schedule that have been omitted. These examples are for the benefit of SACO participants who make classification proposals but are not subscribers to Classification Web. However, participants who use the Classification Web online proposal system may also find the examples informative. Classification Web subscribers should use the online proposal system. Instructions and examples of Classification Web proposals are available on the SACO website at http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/ClassWeb/LCClassification.html.

Example A: New Cutter number

Title of Work Cat.: Educational background of systems librarians.

This example shows a proposal for a new Cutter number within a class. The work being cataloged is about systems librarians but there was no existing number in Z682.4 for this group. Accordingly, a proposal was made to establish a number for systems librarians. The anchor point for this proposal is Z682.4. Based on the LC Cutter Table and already established numbers the cataloger selects an appropriate Cutter number for Systems librarians and includes it in the proposal. The Cutter is placed with the decimal portion of the number in the aisle of the proposal form.

BEFORE

Z. Libraries
Z664.2-718.8 Library science. Information science
Z682-682.35 Personnel
Z682.4.A-Z Special groups, A-Z

Z682.4.A-Z Special groups, A-Z
Z682.4.A25 Acquisitions librarians
Z682.4.A34 Administrators

Z682.4.R44 Reference librarians
Z682.4.S37 Serials librarians
Z682.4.S65 Special librarians
Z682.4.S89 Student library assistants
Z682.4.T42 Teacher-librarians
Z682.4.V64 Volunteer workers
Z682.4.W65 Women
Z682.4.Y68 Young adult librarians
### AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Z682.4.A-Z</td>
<td>Special groups, A-Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z682.4.A25</td>
<td>Acquisitions librarians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z682.4.A34</td>
<td>Administrators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z682.4.R44</td>
<td>Reference librarians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z682.4.S37</td>
<td>Serials librarians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z682.4.S65</td>
<td>Special librarians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z682.4.S89</td>
<td>Student library assistants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z682.4.S94</td>
<td>Systems librarians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z682.4.T42</td>
<td>Teacher-librarians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z682.4.V64</td>
<td>Volunteer workers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z682.4.W65</td>
<td>Women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z682.4.Y68</td>
<td>Young adult librarians</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM**

Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
<th>Pattern:</th>
<th>Better:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>682</td>
<td>.4.A-Z</td>
<td>Special ...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>682</td>
<td>.4.S94</td>
<td>Systems librarians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Work Cat:** Donian, J.M. Educational background of systems librarians, c1998.

For Classification Editorial Use:  

Weekly List No.:  

Quarterly No.:  

Coop. Library Code:  

WaU  

Coop. Cat. Code:  

CPSO Notes:  

194
Example B: New Cutter number plus see reference from one entry to another

Title of Work Cat.: Cléobis et Biton.

The work is a catalog of an exhibition about two characters in Greek mythology who were the sons of Cydippe, noted for their filial devotion and athletic prowess. The characters are always cited together in reference books, generally as Cleobis and Biton. A number in BL820 is needed for this work, so a proposal is made for a Cutter under Cleobis and Biton. Since some reference books cite them as Biton and Cleobis, a cross-reference is made to refer catalogers from Biton to the number under Cleobis and Biton.

BEFORE

BL Religions. Mythology. Rationalism
BL700-820 Classical religion and mythology
BL820 Special deities and characters of classical mythology, A-Z

BL820 Special deities and characters of classical mythology, A-Z
Including cults
.A25 Adonis
.A3 Aeacus
.B2 Bacchus. Dionysus
.B28 Baucis and Philemon
.B64 Bona Dea
.C127 Cacus
.C13 Cadmus

AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

BL820 Special deities and characters of classical mythology, A-Z
Including cults
.A25 Adonis
.A3 Aeacus
.B2 Bacchus. Dionysus
.B28 Baucis and Philemon
.B64 Bona Dea
.Bito see BL820.C62
.C127 Cacus
.C13 Cadmus
.C57 Chimera
.C6 Circe
.C65 Cupid. Eros
.C7 Curetes
## LC Classification Proposal Form

**Copy, complete, and fax to:** Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BL</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>Pattern:</td>
<td>Better:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Number:</th>
<th>Decimal:</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[820 .A-Z]</td>
<td>Special deities ...]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>820 .C62</td>
<td>Biton see BL820.C62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[...]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cleobis and Biton</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Work Cat:** Cléobis et Biton, 1995.

**For Classification Editorial Use:**

**Weekly List No.:**

**Quarterly No.:**

**Coop. Library Code:** NJP

**Coop. Cat. Code:**

**CPSO Notes:**
Example C: New Cutter number in a table; pattern cited

Title of Work Cat.: *La novela histórica chilena dentro del marco de la novelística chilena, 1843-1879*.

The work being cataloged is about the 19th century Chilean historical novel. A new subject heading is proposed: **Historical fiction, Chilean**. Chilean literature is classed in PQ7900-8098.436, using literature table P-PZ20. In that table, for history and criticism, there is an existing number for historical fiction, so the work cataloged gets classified as PQ8007.H5. Although not required, because the number is not needed for the work being cataloged, the library decides to establish a number in the table for collections of historical fiction. The classification proposal cites the pattern found elsewhere in the table. Once the Cutter number in the table is approved by LC, the full class number for collections of Chilean historical fiction can be determined, and this number can then be added to the subject authority record for **Historical fiction, Chilean**.

**BEFORE**

PQ  Romance literatures
    PQ6001-8929  Spanish literature
    PQ7900-8098.436  Chile (Table P-PZ20)

**P-PZ20 Table for Literature (200 Nos.)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>History and criticism</th>
<th>Periodicals. Societies. Serials</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Periodicals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Yearbooks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Societies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prose. Fiction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
<td>General works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99</td>
<td>Early to 1800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>19th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>20th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>Short stories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.A-Z</td>
<td>Special topics, A-Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.A39</td>
<td>Adventure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.A45</td>
<td>Alienation (Social psychology)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.A53</td>
<td>Amazon River Region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Collections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Periodicals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>133</td>
<td>Comprehensive collections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>173</td>
<td>General prose collections</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

197
Classification Proposal Examples

174.A-Z Special. By form or subject, A-Z
174.A96 Autobiographies
174.C48 Children
174.G83 Guadalajara (Mexico)
174.M67 Motherhood
174.T7 Travel
174.W65 Women

Fiction
175 General collections
176 Short stories

176.5.A-Z Special. By form or subject, A-Z
176.5.C37 Carnival
176.5.C57 Christmas stories
176.5.C58 City and town life
176.5.D43 Death
176.5.D48 Detective and mystery stories
176.5.E75 Erotic stories

176.5.G37 Gays
176.5.G45 Ghost stories
176.5.H63 Hockey stories
176.5.H67 Horror tales

AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

176.5.A-Z Special. By form or subject, A-Z
176.5.C37 Carnival
176.5.C57 Christmas stories
176.5.C58 City and town life
176.5.D43 Death
176.5.D48 Detective and mystery stories
176.5.E75 Erotic stories

176.5.G37 Gays
176.5.G45 Ghost stories
176.5.H63 Hockey stories
176.5.H67 Horror tales

SUBJECT AUTHORITY WITH CLASSIFICATION NUMBERS FOR HISTORY AND CRITICISM AND COLLECTIONS

053 0 $a PQ8007.H5 $c History
053 0 $a PQ8076.5.H57 $c Collections
150 $a Historical fiction, Chilean
450 $a Chilean historical fiction
550 $w g $a Chilean fiction
# Classification Proposal Examples

**LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM**  
Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters: Table P-PZ20</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pattern: <strong>107.H5</strong> (Table P-PZ20)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Number:</th>
<th>Decimal: Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[176 .5.A-Z</td>
<td>Special ...]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176 .5.H57</td>
<td>Historical fiction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Work Cat:** Löfquist, E. *La novela histórica chilena* ... 1995.

For Classification Editorial Use:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weekly List No.:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quarterly No.:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coop. Library Code:</th>
<th>Coop. Cat. Code:</th>
<th>CPSO Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>UkCU</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example D: New Cutter number; hierarchical Cutters

Title of Work Cat.: "Permanent, faithful, stable" : Christian same-sex partnerships.

The work is about same-sex marriages within the context of the Church of England. Within the BX schedule there are several numbers for marriage, but nothing specific for same-sex marriage. In the absence of such a number, the only possible choice is the number for general works, but this is too broad, so a proposal is made to establish a new number for same-sex marriage. In this particular classification there are hierarchical Cutters. The topic "Marriage" is broken down into subtopics, but the alphabetic portion of the Cutter for all of them stays the same (.M for marriage). The subtopics within the main topic are arranged alphabetically by the numeric portion of the Cutter. This kind of example is atypical, since most Cutter lists are not hierarchical.

BEFORE

BX  Christian denominations
BX5011-5743.52  Church of England
BX5148-5149  Sacraments, etc.
  BX5149.A-Z  Individual, A-Z e.g.

Sacraments, etc.
  Theology, liturgy, rite
BX5148  General works
BX5149.A-Z  Individual, A-Z e.g.
BX5149.B2  Baptism
BX5149.C5  Communion. Eucharist
BX5149.C6  Confession and absolution
BX5149.C7  Confirmation
  Marriage
BX5149.M2  General works
BX5149.M3  Divorce
BX5149.M4  Remarriage
BX5149.O7  Ordination
BX5149.P4  Penance

AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

Sacraments, etc.
  Theology, liturgy, rite
BX5148  General works
BX5149.B2  Baptism
BX5149.C5  Communion. Eucharist
BX5149.C6  Confession and absolution
BX5149.C7  Confirmation
  Marriage
BX5149.M2  General works
BX5149.M3  Divorce
BX5149.M4  Remarriage
BX5149.M5  Same-sex marriage
BX5149.O7  Ordination
BX5149.P4  Penance
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>BX</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For Classification Editorial Use:</td>
<td>Weekly List No.:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coop. Library Code:</td>
<td>WaU</td>
<td>Coop. Cat. Code:</td>
<td>CPSO Notes:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Classification Proposal Examples

Example E: New whole number; anchor point above

Title of Work Cat.: Beaufort Inlet and Gordon Inlet: estuaries of the Jerramungup Shire.

The work is about two inlets that are estuaries along the southwestern coast of Western Australia. An examination of the schedules shows that the work should be classified in GC within the numbers for the Indian Ocean, but there is no number that deals with Australia, so a new number is proposed for this. Otherwise, the only possible choice is GC721 for general works, which is too broad. The specific choice of number proposed is somewhat arbitrary, but leaves room for additional new numbers before and after as needed.

BEFORE

GC Oceanography
GC401-881 Oceanography. By region
GC721-761 Indian Ocean

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GC721</td>
<td>General works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GC731</td>
<td>Arabian Sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GC741</td>
<td>Red Sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GC751</td>
<td>Persian Gulf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GC761</td>
<td>Bay of Bengal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bay of Bengal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pacific Ocean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GC771</td>
<td>General works</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indian Ocean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>General works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Arabian Sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Red Sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Persian Gulf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bay of Bengal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bay of Bengal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Australian coast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pacific Ocean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>General works</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM
Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern:</th>
<th>Better:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Number:</th>
<th>Decimal:</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[761]</td>
<td>765</td>
<td>Bay of Bengal]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Australian coast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


For Classification Editorial Use:  
Weekly List No.:  
Quarterly No.:  

Coop. Library Code:  
Coop. Cat. Code:  
CPSO Notes: 

WaU
Classification Proposal Examples

Example F: New whole number; anchor point below

Title of Work Cat.: The star*s family of astronomy and related resources--the starpages.

The work being cataloged is a Web-based directory of astronomy and astronomers.

This proposal illustrates the creation of a new whole number. It also illustrates the use of an anchor point below where the new number will be placed. Since the placement of the number for "Directories" is based on the model for the Q schedule shown in SCM F 195, "Q model" is cited as the pattern used.

BEFORE

QB Astronomy

QB34.5 Women in astronomy. Women astronomers
Biography
QB35 Collective
QB36.A-Z Individual, A-Z e.g.
QB36.B8 Brahe
QB36.C8 Copernicus
QB36.G2 Galileo
QB41 Early works through 1700
  Cf. GA6, Cosmography
  Cf. VK551, Navigation (early works)
  General works, treatises, and advanced textbooks
  Cf. QB500, Descriptive astronomy
QB42 1701-1800
QB43 1801-1969
QB43.2 1970-

MODEL FOR THE Q SCHEDULE

Periodicals, societies, congresses, serial publications
Voyages and expeditions
Dictionaries and encyclopedias
Communication of [...] information
  Information services
  [...] literature
  Abstracting and indexing
  Language, Authorship
  Translating, Translating services
Philosophy
Nomenclature, terminology, notation, abbreviations
Classification
History
  By region or country, A-Z
Biography
  Collective
  Individual, A-Z
Directories
Early works [...]

204
General works, treatises, and advanced textbooks
Elementary textbooks
Pictorial works and atlases
[...] illustration
Popular works
Juvenile works
Recreations
[...] as a profession. Vocational guidance
Study and teaching. Research
Outlines, syllabi
Problems, exercises, examinations
Experiments
Laboratory manuals
Laboratories
Individual laboratories, A-Z
Technique
Instruments and apparatus
Collecting and preservation
Museums. Exhibitions
Handbooks, tables, formulas, etc.
Miscellany and curiosa

**AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

QB34.5  Women in astronomy. Women astronomers
        Biography
QB35    Collective
QB36.A-Z Individual, A-Z e.g.
QB36.B8  Brahe
QB36.C8  Copernicus
QB36.G2  Galileo
QB40    Directories
QB41    Early works through 1700
        Cf. GA6, Cosmography
        Cf. VK551, Navigation (early works)
        General works, treatises, and advanced textbooks
        Cf. QB500, Descriptive astronomy
QB42    1701-1800
QB43    1801-1969
QB43.2  1970-
LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM
Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Q model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Better:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Number:</th>
<th>Decimal:</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>[41]</td>
<td>Directories Early ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Work Cat: The Star's family of astronomy and related resources ... via WWW.

For Classification Editorial Use:

Weekly List No.:

Quarterly No.:

Coop. Library Code: WaU

Coop. Cat. Code: CPSO Notes:
Example G: New decimal number; anchor point above

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Tabletop hockey.*

This book on tabletop hockey generated both a new subject heading and the need for a new classification number. Within the games area in GV there are sections of numbers for board games, computer games, video games, and fantasy games, but no specific area set aside for tabletop games. There is, however, a specific number for foosball, a table soccer game. Since these two games are related, a proposal is made to situate tabletop hockey beneath foosball with its own number. A new decimal number is needed, but the specific choice of number is somewhat arbitrary. The proposal selects a number that leaves room for new games on either side.

**BEFORE**

GV Recreation. Leisure  
GV1199-1570 Games and amusements  
GV1221-1469.35 Indoor games and amusements

| GV1469.3 | Video games  
| : | Cf. TK6681, *Video game equipment*  
GV1469.4 | General works  
| : | :  
GV1469.4 | Foosball  
GV1469.6 | Fantasy games

**AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

| GV1469.3 | Video games  
| : | Cf. TK6681, *Video game equipment*  
GV1469.4 | General works  
| : | :  
GV1469.4 | Foosball  
GV1469.45 | tabletop hockey  
GV1469.6 | Fantasy games
LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM
Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
<th>Pattern:</th>
<th>Better:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Class Number: | Decimal: | Cutters, Captions, Notes: |
[1469 .4 Foosball] 1469 .45 Tabletop hockey

Work Cat: **Peden, G. Tabletop hockey, 2000.**

For Classification Editorial Use: Weekly List No.:

Quarterly No.:

Coop. Library Code: **CaOONL**

Coop. Cat. Code: | CPSO Notes: |
Example H: New decimal number; pattern cited

Title of Work Cat.: Moskovskii arkhiv Ministerstva iustitsii i russkaia istoricheskaia naukarkhivisty i istoriki vo vtoroi polovine XIX-nachale XX veka.

Translation of title: The Moscow archive of the Ministry of Justice and Russian historical science: archivists and historians in the 2nd half of the 19th to the beginning of the 20th century.

A number is needed for records of the Russian Ministry of Justice. An examination of the order of existing captions in CD1721-1733.3 shows that it is primarily arranged alphabetically by ministry. This arrangement is confirmed by an existing pattern elsewhere in the same schedule (in this case, under France). Based on this information, the placement of the new number for Justice between already existing numbers for Interior and Navy is established. Since there are no whole numbers available, a decimal number must be proposed. The choice of specific decimal is somewhat arbitrary and could just as easily have been another number such as .3 or .4.

BEFORE

CD Diplomatics. Archives. Seals
CD921-4280 Archives
CD995-4280 History and statistics
CD1000-4280 By region or country
CD1000-2000 Europe
CD1710-1739.5 Russia. Soviet Union. Russia (Federation)

CD1710-1739.5 Russia. Soviet Union. Russia (Federation)
Other national government records, by ministry, office, etc.
CD1721 Agriculture and land
CD1723 Communications and transport
CD1724 Council of ministers
CD1725 Finance
CD1726 Foreign affairs
CD1728 Interior
CD1729 Navy
CD1730 Education
CD1731 Senate
CD1732 Defense. Military archives of the General Staff
CD1733 Literature and the arts
CD1733.2 Science and technology
CD1733.3 History. Central Party Archives
Classification Proposal Examples

PATTERN

CD1190-1219.5 France
Other national government records, by ministry, office, etc.
CD1201 Foreign affairs
CD1202 Agriculture
CD1203 Colonies
CD1204 Commerce
CD1205 Finance
CD1206 Defense
CD1207 Education
CD1208 Interior
CD1209 Justice
CD1210 Marine
CD1211 Public works

AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

CD1710-1739.5 Russia. Soviet Union. Russia (Federation)
Other national government records. By ministry, office, etc.
CD1721 Agriculture and land
CD1723 Communications and transport
CD1724 Council of ministers
CD1725 Finance
CD1726 Foreign affairs
CD1728 Interior
CD1728.5 Justice
CD1729 Navy
CD1730 Education
CD1731 Senate
CD1732 Defense. Military archives of the General Staff
CD1733 Literature and the arts
CD1733.2 Science and technology
CD1733.3 History. Central Party Archives
## LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM

Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CD</td>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattern:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>COOP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class Number:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[1728</td>
<td>Interior]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1728</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>Justice</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Work Cat:** Shokhin, L.I. Moskovskii archiv Ministerstva Juстицii ... 1999.

For Classification Editorial Use:

Weekly List No.:

Quarterly No.:

Coop. Library Code: NNC

Coop. Cat. Code:    CPSO Notes:
Example I: New decimal number; anchor point below

Title of Work Cat.: *Catalogo del Museo civico di Belluno*.

No number exists for the Museo civico di Belluno, so a new number for the city of Belluno and the Museo civico is proposed. The city must fit alphabetically into the existing schedule, so a decimal number between N2515.5 and N2516 is needed. The number selected is somewhat arbitrary, but must leave room for future additions on either side. The anchor point chosen was the number below where the new number is to be inserted, but in this particular case it could just as easily have been the number above.

BEFORE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N2510</th>
<th>Collective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ancona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2513</td>
<td>Museo nazionale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2513.5</td>
<td>Pinacoteca comunale Francesco Podesti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2515</td>
<td>Aquileia. Museo archeologico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2515.2</td>
<td>Arezzo. Museo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2515.4</td>
<td>Bari (Province). Pinacoteca provinciale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2515.5</td>
<td>Bassano del Grappa. Museo civico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2516</td>
<td>Benevento. Museo del Sannio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2517</td>
<td>Bergamo. Accademia Carrara</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N2510</th>
<th>Collective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ancona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2513</td>
<td>Museo nazionale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2513.5</td>
<td>Pinacoteca comunale Francesco Podesti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2515</td>
<td>Aquileia. Museo archeologico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2515.2</td>
<td>Arezzo. Museo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2515.4</td>
<td>Bari (Province). Pinacoteca provinciale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2515.5</td>
<td>Bassano del Grappa. Museo civico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2515.8</td>
<td>Belluno. Museo civico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2516</td>
<td>Benevento. Museo del Sannio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2517</td>
<td>Bergamo. Accademia Carrara</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Classification Proposal Examples

**LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM**
Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters: N</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
<th>Pattern:</th>
<th>Better:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Class Number:  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2515 [2516</th>
<th>Decimal: .8</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Belluno. Museo civico</td>
<td>Benevento. Museo del Sannio</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Work Cat:** Catalogo del Museo civico di Belluno, 1983-1997.

**For Classification Editorial Use:**

**Weekly List No.:**

**Quarterly No.:**

**Coop. Library Code:** WaU

**Coop. Cat. Code:**

**CPSO Notes:**
Example J: New decimal number; caption including explanatory note

Title of Work Cat.: Insect parasitoids.

There is no specific number in the schedule for insects that covers the concept of parasitic insects and parasitoids. In the absence of such a number, the only place to put works on this subject is the number for general works, treatises, and textbooks on insects, which the cataloger deems is too broad and would prevent books on parasitic insects from being shelved together. The solution is to propose a new number. Since there is no pattern available for where to place this, the cataloger chooses one based on judgment. The proposal is made for the concept of parasitism in insects, but an explanatory note is included that makes clear that this is where parasitic insects and parasitoids should be classed.

BEFORE

QL Zoology
QL360-599.82 Invertebrates
QL434-599.82 Arthropoda
QL461-599.82 Insects

QL492.5 Immunology
QL493 Genetics
QL493.5 Molecular entomology
QL494 Anatomy and morphology
QL494.4 Metamorphosis
QL494.8 Cytology
           Physiology
QL495 General works
QL495.5 Development
QL496 Behavior. Social life. Instinct
QL496.15 Population dynamics
QL496.2 Migration
QL496.4 Ecology
QL496.5 Sound and sound production
QL496.7 Flight
QL497 Miscellany and curiosa
AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

QL492.5 Immunology
QL493 Genetics
QL493.5 Molecular entomology
QL494 Anatomy and morphology
QL494.4 Metamorphosis
QL494.8 Cytology
       Physiology
QL495 General works
QL495.5 Development
QL496 Behavior. Social life. Instinct
       Parasitism
       Including parasitic insects and parasitoids
QL496.15 Population dynamics
QL496.2 Migration
QL496.4 Ecology
QL496.5 Sound and sound production
QL496.7 Flight
QL497 Miscellany and curiosa
### LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM

Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters: QL</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pattern:</td>
<td>Better:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Number:</th>
<th>Decimal:</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[496 496] .12</td>
<td>Behavior ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Parasitism**

*Including parasitic insects and parasitoids*

---

**Work Cat:** Insect parasitoids, 1994.

**For Classification Editorial Use:**

**Weekly List No.:**

**Quarterly No.:**

**Coop. Library Code:** **WaU**

**Coop. Cat. Code:**

**CPSO Notes:**
Example K: Whole and decimal numbers; pattern cited

Title of Work Cat.: *Polar museums directory*.

This proposal shows the addition of both a whole number and a decimal number. The work cataloged is a Web-based directory of museums about polar regions. The library cataloging this publication classifies electronic resources, so it needs to assign a classification number to it. There is no number for museums under polar regions, so the only place for it would be general works. However, general works is clearly too broad in this case. A useful pattern is found under Antarctic regions. In that part of the schedule, the numbers for museums and exhibitions fall between the numbers for juvenile works and history. While there is no number under polar regions for juvenile works, there is one for history, so using the pattern the new numbers are placed above history. Since there is only one whole number available in that area of the schedule, at least one of the numbers proposed must be a decimal. The actual choices of numbers are somewhat arbitrary.

BEFORE

G Geography (General)
G575-635 Arctic and Antarctic regions
G575-599 Polar regions

Polar regions

*Including both poles*

G575 Periodicals. Societies. Serials
G576 Collected works (Nonserial)
G578 Congresses
G580 History
Biography
G584 Collective
G585 Individual, A-Z
**Classification Proposal Examples**

**PATTERN**

- Antarctic regions. Antarctic exploration
- G845 Periodicals. Societies. Serials
- G845.5 Congresses
- G846 Collected works (Nonserial)
- G850 Voyages. By date
  
  Further divided by explorer, traveler, expedition or ship, A-Z
- G855 Dictionaries. Encyclopedias
- G860 General works
- G863 Juvenile works
- Museums. Exhibitions
- G864 General works
- G865 By region or country, A-Z
- History
- G870 General works
- G872 Exploration. By nationality, A-Z
- Biography
- G874 Collective
- G875 Individual, A-Z

**AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

- Polar regions
  
  Including both poles
- G575 Periodicals. Societies. Serials
- G576 Collected works (Nonserial)
- G578 Congresses
- Museums. Exhibitions
- G579 General works
- G579.3 By region or country, A-Z
- G580 History
- Biography
- G584 Collective
- G585 Individual, A-Z
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattern:</td>
<td></td>
<td>G864-865</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[578]</td>
<td>Congresses]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>579</td>
<td>Museums, Exhibitions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>579</td>
<td>General works</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.3</td>
<td>By region or country, A-Z</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Work Cat:** Mills, W.J. Polar museums directory, via WWW.

For Classification Editorial Use:  
Weekly List No.:  
Quarterly No.:  

Coop. Library Code: WaU  
Coop. Cat. Code:  
CPSO Notes:
Classification Proposal Examples

Example I: Multiple decimal numbers; pattern cited

Title of Work Cat.: Clean air express : air quality resource manual for teachers.

The subject heading assigned to this work is:
Air -- Pollution -- Study and teaching -- Washington (State) -- Puget Sound Region.

There is no number for study and teaching under air pollution, but there are similar
numbers established elsewhere, e.g., under water pollution. Using the pattern found
under water pollution, a proposal is made that consists of multiple numbers for study and
teaching of air pollution, even though for the bibliographic record only the number for
study and teaching in Washington State is needed.

BEFORE

TD  Environmental technology. Sanitary engineering
TD878-898.8  Special types of environment
TD881-890  Air pollution and its control

Air pollution and its control
  Cf. HC79.A4, Economic aspects
  Cf. QC882+, Atmospheric pollutants
  Cf. QH545.A3, Influence on plants and animals
  Cf. QP82.2.A3, Physiological effect
  Cf. RA576+, Public health

TD881  Periodicals, societies, congresses, etc.
TD881.5  Dictionaries and encyclopedias
TD882  Directories
TD883  General works
TD883.1  General special
TD883.13  Juvenile works
TD883.14  Addresses, essays, lectures
TD883.15  Research

PATTERN

Water pollution
  Cf. GC1080+, Marine pollution
  Cf. QH545.W3, Effect on plants and animals
  Cf. RA591+, Public health

TD419  Periodicals. Societies. Serials
TD419.5  Congresses
TD420  General works
TD422  Juvenile works
TD423  General special
  Study and teaching
TD424  General works
  By region or country
    United States
TD424.3  General works
TD424.35.A-Z  By region or state, A-Z
TD424.4.A-Z  Other regions or countries, A-Z
TD424.5  Research
AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

Air pollution and its control
  Cf. HC79.A4, Economic aspects
  Cf. QC882+, Atmospheric pollutants
  Cf. QH545.A3, Influence on plants and animals
  Cf. QP82.2.A3, Physiological effect
  Cf. RA576+, Public health

TD881 Periodicals, societies, congresses, etc.
TD881.5 Dictionaries and encyclopedias
TD882 Directories
TD883 General works
TD883.1 General special
TD883.13 Juvenile works
TD883.14 Addresses, essays, lectures
  Study and teaching
  TD883.143 General works
    By region or country
      United States
  TD883.144 General works
TD883.145.A-Z By region or state, A-Z
TD883.148.A-Z Other regions or countries, A-Z
TD883.15 Research
# Classification Proposal Examples

## LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM

Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
<th>Pattern:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TD424-424.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Better:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Number:</th>
<th>Decimal:</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>883 .143</td>
<td></td>
<td>Study and teaching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>General works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>By region or country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>883 .144</td>
<td></td>
<td>General works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>883 .145.A-Z</td>
<td></td>
<td>By region or state, A-Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>883 .148.A-Z</td>
<td></td>
<td>Other regions or countries, A-Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[883 .15</td>
<td></td>
<td>Research]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Work Cat:** *Clean air express, 1996.*

For Classification Editorial Use:

Weekly List No.:

Quarterly No.:

Coop. Library Code: *WaU*

Coop. Cat. Code: CPSO Notes:
Example M: Changing a caption

This proposal illustrates a simple change of a caption. The asterisk next to the Cutter in the proposal is an indication that something in this line is being changed. A parenthetical note below explains what the change is.

In this case, the cataloger finds a caption that uses out of date terminology. Under Z688.B54 the caption found is Biological chemistry. This was once a valid LC subject heading, but the current form of this heading is Biochemistry. Although the subject heading was changed, the old term was left unchanged in the Z classification schedule. The proposal seeks to bring the caption into line with the current LC subject heading. No change to the Cutter number is needed because the change in caption does not affect the alphabetical position of this line with the others above and below it. Also note that no “work cat.” needs to be cited on the proposal form in this particular case, since this proposal is being made simply to align terminology between LCSH and LCC.

BEFORE

Z  Libraries
Z664.2-718.8  Library science. Information science
Z687-718.8  The collections. The books
  Z688.A1-Z Special collections
  Z688.A5-Z Special, A-Z
Z688.A5-Z  Special, A-Z
Z688.A54  Africa
  :
Z688.B52  Big books (Children's books)
Z688.B54  Biological chemistry
Z688.B55  Birth control

AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

Z688.A5-Z  Special, A-Z
Z688.A54  Africa
  :
Z688.B52  Big books (Children's books)
Z688.B54  Biochemistry
Z688.B55  Birth control
### LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM

Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>COOP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern:</th>
<th>Better:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Number:</th>
<th>Decimal:</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[688</td>
<td>.A5-Z</td>
<td>Special ...] Biochemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*688</td>
<td>.B54</td>
<td><em>(Change caption.)</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Work Cat:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>For Classification Editorial Use:</th>
<th>Weekly List No.:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quarterly No.:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coop. Library Code:</th>
<th>Coop. Cat. Code:</th>
<th>CPSO Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WaU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example N: Changing (adding to) a caption and adding a see reference

Title of Work Cat.: Prescribed burning on Wyoming rangeland.

After examining the SF classification schedule, the cataloger decides that a number already exists under "Fire management" that is appropriate to use for prescribed burning, but that the caption under that number should be augmented to make this clear. In addition, a see reference from "Prescribed burning" to the number for "Fire management" will help direct catalogers to the correct location. The asterisk next to .F57 indicates that a change is being made to something on that line and the parenthetical instruction explains what the change is. The bracketed ellipses show that there are lines in the schedule that are not included in the proposal and have been skipped over, and that no changes to them are being made. A second anchor point is used to ensure the correct placement of the see reference.

BEFORE

SF  Animal culture
    SF84.82-85.6 Rangelands. Range management. Grazing
        SF85.6.A-Z Special topics, A-Z
    SF85.6.A-Z Special topics, A-Z
    SF85.6.D43 Decision making
        Including decision support systems
    SF85.6.E82 Evaluation
    SF85.6.F57 Fire management
    SF85.6.M36 Mapping
    SF85.6.P56 Photography
    SF85.6.R45 Remote sensing

AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

SF85.6.A-Z Special topics, A-Z
SF85.6.D43 Decision making
    Including decision support systems
SF85.6.E82 Evaluation
SF85.6.F57 Fire management. Prescribed burning
SF85.6.M36 Mapping
SF85.6.P56 Photography
    Prescribed burning, see SF85.6.F57
SF85.6.R45 Remote sensing
**LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM**
Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattern:</td>
<td>Better:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Number:</th>
<th>Decimal:</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[85] .6.A-Z</td>
<td></td>
<td>Special topics, A-Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*85 .6.F57</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fire management. Prescribed burning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Change caption.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prescribed burning, see SF85.6.F57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[85] .6.R45</td>
<td>Remote sensing]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Work Cat:** Smith, M.A. Prescribed burning on Wyoming rangeland, 1985.

For Classification Editorial Use:
Weekly List No.:
Quarterly No.:

Coop. Library Code: WaU  Coop. Cat. Code:  CPSO Notes:
Example O: Changing (adding to) a caption and adding a see reference across a range of numbers

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Ornamental vines for Florida.*

This proposal is similar to the previous one, but there is a range of numbers involved, unlike the previous example in which the see reference is in a single classification made up of multiple Cutters.

In the particular case here, the LC subject heading used for vines is "Climbing plants." This has a place in the schedule, but there is no reference in the schedule from vines. Since this term might be sought by a cataloger, a proposal is made to add "Vines" to the caption with "Climbing plants" and to add a see reference in the place where vines would be put alphabetically if it were to have its own number.

**BEFORE**

SB  Plant culture  
SB403-450.87 Flowers and flower culture. Ornamental plants  
SB421-439.8 Classes of plants

Classes of plants  
*For works limited to specific genera, species, etc., see SB413.A+

SB421 Alpine plants. Rock-garden plants  
\ldots

SB426 Chalk and limestone garden plants and gardens  
SB427 Climbing plants  
Damp garden plants, see SB423.3  
SB427.5 Desert plants. Desert gardening  
\ldots

SB438.8 Variegated plants  
Wild plants. Wild flowers. Native plants  
*Including landscaping with native plants, natural landscaping, and natural gardens*

SB439 General works

**AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

Classes of plants  
*For works limited to specific genera, species, etc., see SB413.A+

SB421 Alpine plants. Rock-garden plants  
\ldots

SB426 Chalk and limestone garden plants and gardens  
SB427 Climbing plants. Vines  
Damp garden plants, see SB423.3  
SB427.5 Desert plants. Desert gardening  
\ldots

SB438.8 Variegated plants  
Vines, see SB427  
Wild plants. Wild flowers. Native plants  
*Including landscaping with native plants, natural landscaping, and natural gardens*

SB439 General works
**LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM**

Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern:</th>
<th>Better:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Number:</th>
<th>Decimal:</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>* 427</td>
<td></td>
<td>Climbing plants. Vines (Change caption.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[438 .8]</td>
<td></td>
<td>Variegated plants] Vines, see SB427</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


For Classification Editorial Use:  
Weekly List No.:  
Quarterly No.:  

Coop. Library Code:  
Coop. Cat. Code:  
CPSO Notes:  

WaU
Example P: See references for pseudonyms of literary authors

Title of Work Cat.: Tenpō no yuki.

In many cases, the classification number established for a literary author has not been printed in the P classification schedules, but can be found in the name authority record for the author or in LC’s online shelflist. LC policy is to class works by or about an author who writes under several pseudonyms in the single number that has been established for that author, regardless of the name under which the work being cataloged has been entered. For authors who use pseudonyms, SCM F 632 instructs catalogers to submit a proposal to have the literary author number printed in the appropriate P schedule together with see references from all pseudonyms. The pseudonyms need not be authorized as access points to be printed in the classification schedules.

Other categories in which LC will print a literary author or work number in the P schedules include: literary authors whose name changes significantly due to changes in cataloging rules, marital status, etc.; literary authors born before 1875; anonymous works published before 1899.

In the particular case in this example, the author Mariko Ichihara has a pseudonym, Mariko Aida. The cataloger submits a proposal to print the literary author number established for Ichihara (PL871.5.C54) and a see reference from the place in the schedule where Aida would be classed if the single number established for this author had been under that name.

BEFORE

PL Languages of Eastern Asia, Africa, Oceania
  PL700-889 Japanese literature
    PL867-878 Heisei period, 1989-

  Subarrange each work by Table P-PZ43

PL867.5 A The author number is determined by the second letter of the name
  Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40

PL868 B The author number is determined by the second letter of the name
  Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40

PL868.5 Ch The author number is determined by the second letter of the name
  Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40

PL871.5 I The author number is determined by the second letter of the name
  Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40

PL872 J The author number is determined by the second letter of the name
  Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40
Classification Proposal Examples

AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

Heisei period, 1989-

  Subarrange each work by Table P-PZ43

PL867.5 A
  The author number is determined by the second letter of the name
  Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40
  Aida, Mariko, 1961- see PL871.5.C54

PL868 B
  The author number is determined by the second letter of the name
  Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40

PL868.5 Ch
  The author number is determined by the second letter of the name
  Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40

:;

PL871.5 I
  The author number is determined by the second letter of the name
  Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40

PL871.5.C54 Ichihara, Mariko, 1961- Table P-PZ40

PL872 J
  The author number is determined by the second letter of the name
  Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40
### LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM

**Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pattern:**

**Better:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Number:</th>
<th>Decimal:</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>867 .5 A</td>
<td></td>
<td>[The author number is determined by the second letter of the name]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Aida, Mariko, 1961- see PL871.5.C54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[…]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>871 .5 I</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ichihara, Mariko, 1981- Table P-PZ40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Work Cat:** Ichihara, M. Tenpō no yuki, 2000.

**For Classification Editorial Use:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weekly List No.:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quarterly No.:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coop. Library Code:</th>
<th>Coop. Cat. Code:</th>
<th>CPSO Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NNC-EA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Classification Proposal Examples

Example Q: Creating a new number and changing the indention of a range of numbers beneath it

Title of Work Cat.: Proceedings of the Third Australasian Fisheries Managers Conference, Rottnest Island, Western Australia, 2-4 August 1995.

There are numbers in the fisheries schedule for Australia, New Zealand, and Oceania, but no number is available for Australasia, the broader region encompassing all of these places. A search through the S schedule does not turn up any other developments that can be used as a pattern. The cataloger proposes a new number for Australasia, and at the same time proposes that the indention of captions beneath it for parts of the Australasian region be changed.

BEFORE

SH Aquaculture. Fisheries. Angling
SH201-400.8 Fisheries
SH219-321 By region or country

Australia
SH317 General works
SH318.A-Z Local, A-Z
SH318.5 New Zealand
Pacific Islands. Oceania
SH319.A2 General works
SH319.A3-Z By island or group of islands, A-Z
SH319.C66 Cook Islands
SH319.F5 Fiji Islands
SH319.F73 French Polynesia
SH319.G88 Guam

M
SH319.W45 Western Samoa
SH319.2.A-Z Indian Ocean islands, A-Z

AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

Australasia
SH316 General works
Australia
SH317 General works
SH318.A-Z Local, A-Z
SH318.5 New Zealand
Pacific Islands. Oceania
SH319.A2 General works
SH319.A3-Z By island or group of islands, A-Z
SH319.C66 Cook Islands
SH319.F5 Fiji Islands
SH319.F73 French Polynesia
SH319.G88 Guam

M
SH319.W45 Western Samoa
SH319.2.A-Z Indian Ocean islands, A-Z
### LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM

Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pattern:</td>
<td>Better:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Number:</th>
<th>Decimal:</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>316</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Australasia</strong> General works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Australia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Change indentation of line and all subsequent lines through SH319.W45.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*317</td>
<td></td>
<td>General works</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Work Cat:** Proceedings of the Third Australasian Fisheries Managers Conference ... 1996.

For Classification Editorial Use:

Weekly List No.:

Quarterly No.:

Coop. Library Code: **WaU**

Coop. Cat. Code:  

CPSO Notes:
**Classification Proposal Examples**

**Example R: Splitting one number into multiple numbers**

**Title of Work Cat.: Wildflowers of Kuwait.**

This example illustrates how one number can be broken up into multiple numbers. In this case, a single number, QK353, is used for botany of all the various countries on the Arabian Peninsula. The cataloger questions why this is so. There are many works devoted to the botany of just one of the countries in that region, and all other countries of the world are allocated their own number(s) or Cutter in the botany schedule. The proposal submitted retains the existing number for general works covering the entire Arabian Peninsula, but establishes separate numbers for each country. The proposal as submitted includes a parenthetical note that clearly indicates that it is a revision of QK353.

A separate proposal is made to change the see references elsewhere in the schedule from Kuwait and Saudi Arabia, and to add additional see references for the other countries of the region.

**BEFORE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QK</th>
<th>Botany</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QK101-474.5</td>
<td>Geographical distribution. Phytogeography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QK108-474.5</td>
<td>Topographical divisions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QK341-379.5</td>
<td>Asia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Asia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QK341</th>
<th>General works</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QK352</td>
<td>Afghanistan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QK353</td>
<td>Arabian Peninsula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including Saudi Arabia, Kuwait, Bahrain, Yemen, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QK354</td>
<td>Baluchistan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QK379</td>
<td>Iraq</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kuwait, see QK353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Saudi Arabia, see QK353</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

Asia
QK341 General works
QK352 Afghanistan
   Arabian Peninsula
QK353 General works
QK353.2 Bahrain
QK353.3 Kuwait
QK353.4 Oman
QK353.5 Qatar
QK353.6 Saudi Arabia
QK353.7 United Arab Emirates
QK353.8 Yemen
QK354 Baluchistan
   :
QK379 Iraq
   Bahrain, see QK353.2
   Kuwait, see QK353.3
   Oman, see QK353.4
   Qatar, see QK353.5
   Saudi Arabia, see QK353.6
   United Arab Emirates, see QK353.7
   Yemen, see QK353.8
**LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM**

Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattern:</td>
<td>Better:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Number:</th>
<th>Decimal:</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Revision of QK353)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[352]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>353</td>
<td></td>
<td>Afghanistan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>353 .2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Arabian Peninsula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>353 .3</td>
<td></td>
<td>General works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>353 .4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Bahrain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>353 .5</td>
<td></td>
<td>Kuwait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>353 .6</td>
<td></td>
<td>Oman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>353 .7</td>
<td></td>
<td>Qatar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>353 .8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>353 .7</td>
<td></td>
<td>United Arab Emirates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>353 .8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yemen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Work Cat: **Shuaib, L. Wildflowers of Kuwait, c1995.**

For Classification Editorial Use:

Weekly List No.:

Quarterly No.:

Coop. Library Code: **WaU**

Coop. Cat. Code: |

CPSO Notes:
**LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM**

Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QK</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Book</td>
<td>Book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattern:</td>
<td>Better:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Number:</th>
<th>Decimal:</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[379]</td>
<td></td>
<td>Iraq] Bahrain, see QK353.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*Kuwait, see QK353.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Oman, see QK353.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Qatar, see QK353.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*Saudi Arabia, see QK353.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>United Arab Emirates, see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>QK353.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yemen, see QK353.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Change see references.)

---

Work Cat:

For Classification Editorial Use:  

Weekly List No.:  

Quarterly No.:  

Coop. Library Code:  

Coop. Cat. Code:  

CPSO Notes:
Classification Proposal Examples

Example S: Extensive revisions

Title of Work Cat.: A community-dependent association between the chiton Katharina tunicata and the alga Schizymenia pacifica.

When a proposed change is so extensive or complicated that it is difficult or cumbersome to use asterisks and instruction lines, the proposal can be formatted as a revision (see SCM F 50 sec. 3c). A parenthetical instruction is placed at the top of the proposal stating to substitute the proposed revision for the existing classification, but no additional asterisks or instruction lines are used within the body of the proposal.

This particular proposal illustrates a case where a proposal is made to split one number into multiple numbers. Based on the work cataloged, a classification number is needed for the chiton species above. A single number in the zoology schedule, QL430.1, represents a taxonomic group, Amphineura, made up of chitons and solenogasters. In the course of doing authority work to establish the subject heading for Katharina tunicata, the cataloger discovers that the group Amphineura is no longer recognized as valid and that the chitons and solenogasters are classified by zoologists in two separate classes of mollusks, the Polyplacophora and the Aplacophora. The cataloger proposes that QL430.1 be broken up into several numbers to accommodate the two taxonomic classes, as well as providing for a specific Cutter number for each family that exists in these classes. Katharina tunicata will class in the number for the family to which it belongs, Mopaliidae. In this particular case, QL430.1 was retained in the schedule rather than being canceled, but with a different caption, because most works already classed there in the LC shelflist were about chitons and solenogasters. The books on solenogasters would not then need to be reclassed if a library decided to reclass its materials on these two groups based on the new numbers.

BEFORE

QL  Zoology
QL360-599.82  Invertebrates
QL401-432  Mollusca
   QL430.1-432  Systematic divisions

   Systematic divisions
QL430.1  Amphineura (Chitons; solenogasters)
QL430.15  Monoplacophora
AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

Systematic divisions
Aplacophora (Solenogasters)

QL430.1        General works and orders
QL430.12.P76    Proneomeniidae
Polyplacophora (Chitons)

QL430.13        General works and orders
QL430.14.A26    Acanthochitonidae
QL430.14.C47    Chitonidae
QL430.14.I83    Ischnochitonidae
QL430.14.M64    Mopaliidae
QL430.15        Monoplacophora
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
<th>Pattern:</th>
<th>Better:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Class Number:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decimal:</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(Substitute the following revision for QL430.1.)

**[Systematic divisions]**

- **Aplacophora (Solenogasters)**
  - General works and orders
- **By family, A-Z**
- **Proneomeniidae**
- **Polyplacophora (Chitons)**
  - General works and orders
  - By family, A-Z
- **Acanthochitonidae**
- **Chitonidae**
- **Ischnochitonidae**
- **Mopaliidae**

**Work Cat:** Soulaine, E. L. A community-dependent association ... the chiton Katharina tunicata ... 1999.

**For Classification Editorial Use:**

**Weekly List No.:**

**Quarterly No.:**

**Coop. Library Code:** WaU

**Coop. Cat. Code:**

**CPSO Notes:**
Example T: Canceling (invalidating) a number

**Title of Work Cat.:** Synopsis of biological data on the grunts Haemulon aurolineatum and H. plumieri (Pisces:Haemulidae).

The subject authority file contains a see reference from the fish family name Haemulidae to the subject heading Grunts (Fishes). The classification number given in that authority record is QL638.P772. The caption in the classification schedule for that number is Pomadasyidae (Grunts). Further research on the discrepancy between the book in hand and both the authority record and classification schedule shows that the family Pomadasyidae is no longer considered valid and that the correct current name for this family is Haemulidae. Because of this, the existing Cutter under Pomadasyidae should be cancelled and a new Cutter established under the correct family.

Cancelled numbers are not generally deleted from the classification schedule. Instead, the cancelled numbers are enclosed in parentheses, and a see reference is added to the caption directing the cataloger to the number that should be used. The classification proposal requests a new Cutter under QL638.H23 and then also shows the changes to be made to the old number. A parenthetical instruction makes it clear what is needed.

Note that in addition to this classification proposal, LC should be alerted to change the 053s on any subject authority records that had the obsolete number.

While in this case the existing Cutter was cancelled, LC makes a decision to cancel based on the amount of material classed under a number.

**BEFORE**

QL  Zoology
QL605-739.8  Chordates. Vertebrates
  QL614-639.8  Fishes
    QL637.9-638.95  Systematic divisions
      QL638.A-Z  Osteichthyes (Bony fishes). By family, A-Z

QL638.A-Z  Osteichthyes (Bony fishes). By family, A-Z  
  Class here works on species, genera, and families
QL638.A15  Acanthocliniidae
QL638.A2  Acanthuridae (Surgeonfishes)
QL638.A25  Acipenseridae (Sturgeons)
  :
QL638.G95  Gyrinocheilidae
QL638.H25  Halosauridae
  :
QL638.P77  Pomacentridae (Damselishes)
QL638.P772  Pomadasyidae (Grunts)
QL638.P778  Pomatomidae (Bluefishes)
Classification Proposal Examples

AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED

QL638.A-Z Osteichthyes (Bony fishes). By family, A-Z
   Class here works on species, genera, and families
QL638.A15 Acanthocliniidae
QL638.A2 Acanthuridae (Surgeonfishes)
QL638.A25 Acipenseridae (Sturgeons)

QL638.G95 Gyrinocheilidae
QL638.H23 Haemulidae (Grunts)
QL638.H25 Halosauridae

QL638.P77 Pomacentridae (Damselfishes)
(QL638.P772) Pomadasysidae (Grunts), see QL638.H23
QL638.P778 Pomatomidae (Bluefishes)
## LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM

Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Letters:</th>
<th>Page:</th>
<th>No Book</th>
<th>Book</th>
<th>NOL</th>
<th>COOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern:</th>
<th>Better:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Number:</th>
<th>Decimal:</th>
<th>Cutters, Captions, Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### [638 .A-Z]
- Osteichthyes ...

### 638 .H23
- Haemulidae (Grunts)

### *(638 .P772)
- Pomadasysidae (Grunts), see QL638.H23
  - (Parenthesize "QL638.P772"; change line to reference.)

---

**Work Cat:** Darcy, G.H. Synopsis of biological data on the grunts ... (Pisces:Haemulidae), 1993.

**For Classification Editorial Use:**

**Weekly List No.:**

**Quarterly No.:**

**Coop. Library Code:** WaU

**Coop. Cat. Code:**

**CPSO Notes:**

---

243
Glossary

Glossary of Terms, Abbreviations, and Acronyms


AC - Annotated Card. Annotated Card subject headings are a separate supplemental set of juvenile headings used by the Library of Congress and by some other libraries with collections of children's literature. AC headings are included in a separate section of the printed *Library of Congress Subject Headings* and are also searchable in the authority file in OCLC, where they are labelled [CHILDREN'S] in brief and truncated lists. AC authority records are identified by a value b in fixed field 008/11 (Subj: in OCLC) and LCCNs that begin with the prefix sj.

Aisle - The second column on classification proposals, labeled "Decimal" and used for decimal numbers, and in some schedules, also for Cutter numbers, is called the "aisle."

Anchor Point - The anchor point is the line or lines taken from an existing classification schedule that show where the newly proposed lines are to be located and aligned in relation to what is already present.

Backdoor Heading - A heading consisting of a main heading combined with either a free-floating or geographic subdivision that would normally not need to be represented by a specific authority record. Authority records are created for backdoor headings only because they are needed for the reference structure of another heading, or as the initial element of a longer heading/subdivision string. An example is Plains--California, which is used as a broader term reference on the heading Carrizo Plain (Calif.). All BT and RT references (5XX's) in subject authority records must be represented by their own authority records. SACO participants must supply appropriate BT and/or RT references on their proposals, but they are not required to submit separate proposals for backdoor headings. LC staff in SHed will create authority records for backdoor headings as needed.

BFM - Bibliographic file maintenance. SACO participants are not required to identify bibliographic records in LC's catalog that should be changed as a result of a subject or classification proposal. LC Coop. Cat. staff, upon receiving a SACO proposal, search the LC database to determine if any subject headings on existing records should be changed. However, if in the process of doing authority research SACO participants happen to identify LC bibliographic records needing changes, it would be helpful to include that information (e.g., the LCCNs of the records) along with any submitted proposals.

BGN - U.S. Board on Geographic Names. LC headings for place names generally follow the forms established by BGN. These forms are available for searching on the Web through the GNIS (U.S. and Antarctic names) and GNS (all other countries) databases.
**Glossary**

**BIBCO** - The monographic bibliographic record component of the Program for Cooperative Cataloging. BIBCO participants may submit their **SACO** proposals via a Web form. URL: http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/bibco/bibco.html

**BT** - Broader Term. A heading that has a broader hierarchical or inclusive relationship to another subject heading. Broader term references are recorded in MARC 21 authority records in 5XX fields with a subfield $w$ value $g$.

**CDS** - Cataloging Distribution Service, **LC**. CDS distributes LC bibliographic and authority records to utilities and other subscribers, and publishes a variety of cataloging documentation, including the print and electronic forms of **LCSH**, **SCM**, **LCC**, etc. URL: http://www.loc.gov/cds/

**CLED** - Classification Editorial Team, **CPSO**

**CONSER** - Cooperative Online Serials Program. The serials bibliographic record component of the Program for Cooperative Cataloging. URL: http://www.loc.gov/acq/conser/

**Control Subfield $w$** - Subfield $w$ is used in MARC 21 authority records to indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of 4XX and 5XX references. The $w$ value **nee** is used in 4XX fields to indicate that a term was once the established form of the heading. In 5XX fields, the $w$ value **g** is used to indicate that the heading is a broader term. The absence of a control subfield $w$ in 5XX indicates that the heading is a related term.

**Coop** - see **Coop. Cat.**

**Coop. Cat.** - Cooperative Cataloging Team, **RCCD**. Also called Coop or Coop Team.

**Coop. Cat. Liaison** - the staff person in **Coop. Cat.** assigned as the liaison to the **SACO Coordinator** of an institution or **funnel project**. The liaison communicates information about changed and/or approved SACO proposals to the SACO Coordinator and also serves as an intermediary between the SACO library and the **editorial meeting**.

**CPSO** - Cataloging Policy and Support Office, **LC**. URL: http://www.loc.gov/aba/. Email: cpso@loc.gov

**Division of the World - SCM** instruction sheet H 405 contains lists of certain types of problematic named entities and whether they are established as name authorities through **NACO** according to descriptive cataloging conventions (**AACR2**, **LCRI**) or as subject authorities through **SACO** according to subject cataloging rules (**SCM**). This is the "division of the world" of named entities. A tabular version of H 405 can be found on the SACO home page under the title “Alphabetic list of ambiguous entities.”
**Glossary**

**Earlier Form of Heading** - A bracketed phrase found on Weekly Lists adjacent to a term that is no longer the authorized form of a subject heading. When the authorized term in an authority record (MARC 21 field 1XX) is changed, the previously authorized term is usually retained in the authority record as a cross-reference (4XX). To indicate that the term was once the authorized form, the 4XX field will also contain a control subfield $w$ coded with the value nne. On weekly lists, this displays after appropriate cross-references as [EARLIER FORM OF HEADING]. In the printed and electronic *Library of Congress Subject Headings* an earlier form of a heading is indicated by the bracketed phrase [Former heading].

**Editorial Meeting** - see Weekly Lists

**Establish** - An instruction in the SCM to "establish" a heading means that a subject authority record must be created for it, i.e., submit a SACO proposal for it.

**Free-floating Subdivision** - a topical, form, or chronological subdivision that is usable, if appropriate and no conflict exists, under designated types of headings, or in the case of free-floating subdivisions established under specific pattern headings, under any other heading belonging to its category. SCM instruction sheets H 1095-H 1200 contain lists of general and pattern-based free-floating subdivisions. Subject authority records are not normally created for topic--free-floating subdivision combinations. The exceptions are backdoor headings. SACO libraries may make proposals for new or changed free-floating subdivisions as needed.

**Funnel Project** - a group of libraries (or catalogers from various libraries) that have joined together to contribute authority records to the national authority file(s). Funnel participants usually work in a specific subject area (e.g., Africana Subject Funnel Project; Art NACO; American Theological Library Association Funnel), with specific forms or languages of material (e.g., Arabic Funnel; NACO Music Project; OLAC (AV NACO) Funnel), or they may be regionally based (e.g., North Dakota Funnel; CALICO South Africa Funnel Project). Some projects fall into multiple categories. Funnel projects are an efficient means of contribution, in which one person or institution coordinates the project. There may be members at all levels of expertise; however, LC deals solely with the coordinator.


**GNS** - *GEO*net Names Server. A Web-based database from the National Geospatial-Intelligence Agency (NGA) for foreign (non-U.S.) place names as approved by BGN. URL: http://earth-info.nga.mil/gns/html/index.html

**LC** - Library of Congress. URL: http://www.loc.gov/

**LCC** - Library of Congress Classification
**LCCN** - Library of Congress Control Number. A unique identifier that appears in the 010 field of each LC bibliography, name authority, and subject authority record. Subject authority records have a prefix beginning with **sh** (LCSH) or **sj** (Annotated Card (juvenile) subject headings). Subject heading proposals on tentative and approved weekly lists have the prefix **sp**. Records for subject headings in existence before November 1985 have the prefix **sh 85** and records for headings created December 1985 to December 1986 begin with the prefix **sh 86**. Records created since 1987 have the year of creation in the prefix (e.g., **sh 87** for 1987 and **sh 00** for 2000); in 2001, the form of year in the prefix changed from two digits to four (e.g., **sh2001**).

**LCRI** - Library of Congress Rule Interpretations

**LCSH** - Library of Congress Subject Headings


**MARC Organization Code** - A short alphabetic code used to identify libraries and other agencies worldwide. Each SACO library must have a code assigned to it (see the Introduction for further information). The code is used to identify the library responsible for a subject or classification proposal and is carried in the 040 field of MARC 21 authority records. A complete list of codes is published by CDS as MARC Code List for Organizations. URL: http://www.loc.gov/marc/organizations/

**MARC 21** - The five MARC 21 communication formats, MARC 21 Format for Authority Data, MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data, MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data, MARC 21 Format for Classification Data, and MARC 21 Format for Community Information, are widely used standards for the representation and exchange of authority, bibliographic, holdings, classification, and community information data in machine-readable form. The MARC 21 Format for Authority Data is designed to be a carrier for information concerning the authorized forms of names, subjects, and subject subdivisions to be used in constructing access points in MARC records, the forms of these names, subjects, and subject subdivisions that should be used as references to the authorized forms, and the interrelationships among these forms. MARC authority records are distinguished from all other types of MARC records by the presence of code **z** (Authority data) in Leader/06 (Type of record).

**NACO** - Name Authority Cooperative Project. A component of the Program for Cooperative Cataloging. URL: http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/naco/naco.html

**NAF** - LC/NACO Authority File

**NT** - Narrower Term. A heading that has a narrower hierarchical or less inclusive relationship to another subject heading. Narrower terms are not explicitly recorded in LC MARC 21 subject authority records but do display in the printed and electronic versions of the Library of Congress Subject Headings.
**Glossary**

**OCLC** - Online Computer Library Center, an international cataloging utility and provider of cataloging copy and authority records. URL: http://www.oclc.org/

**Organization Code** - see **MARC Organization Code**

**Orphan Heading** - A subject heading that has no **BT**. Orphan headings are generally prohibited in **LCSH**, but there are a limited number of situations in which they are permitted, which are outlined in **SCM H 370**.

**PCC** - Program for Cooperative Cataloging. URL: http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/

**RCCD** - Regional and Cooperative Cataloging Division, **LC**

**RLG** - Research Libraries Group, was an international non-profit membership organization of libraries, archives, historical societies, and museums and one of the largest cataloging utilities and providers of cataloging copy and authority records in North America through its RLG Union Catalog and the RLIN21 client and Web interface. In June 2006, RLG member institutions approved a proposal to combine operations with **OCLC**, beginning July 1, 2006. The RLG Union Catalog will be integrated into OCLC’s WorldCat. URL: http://www.rlg.org

**RLIN21** - RLIN21 was the software used to create and input records in the RLG Union Catalog and LC/NACO Authority File. **RLG** and **OCLC** merged on July 1, 2006, and RLG’s online products and services will be integrated with OCLC’s.

**RT** - Related Term. A heading that has a relationship that is other than hierarchical with another subject heading. Related term references are recorded in **MARC 21** authority records in 5XX fields with no subfield $w$.

**SA** - See Also; also known as See also reference. General see also references are recorded in **MARC 21** authority records in field 360.

**SACO** - Subject Authority Cooperative Program. A component of the Program for Cooperative Cataloging. URL: http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/saco.html

**SACO Coordinator** - The person responsible for reviewing all SACO proposals from a particular institution or **funnel project** prior to submitting them to **Coop. Cat.**

**SACO Mentor** - An experienced SACO contributor from outside the Library of Congress who is available to provide advice to new contributors and to review SACO proposals. A list of mentors is available on the SACO Web site.

**SACLIS** - An electronic discussion list devoted to SACO announcements and discussions among SACO participants. See the **Introduction** for further information.
SCM - Subject Cataloging Manual. Issued by the Library of Congress in loose-leaf and electronically in Cataloger's Desktop in three separate parts: Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings (SCM:SH), Subject Cataloging Manual: Classification (SCM:C), and Subject Cataloging Manual: Shelflisting (SCM:SL). Each section of pages on a specific topic in the manuals is called an instruction sheet (they are also informally referred to as memos). Instruction sheets in the SCM:SH are numbered beginning with the letter H, e.g., H 1334, Buildings and Other Structures. Instruction sheets in the classification part of the manual begin with F and in the shelflisting part with G.

sh - One of three prefixes used in the LCCNs of subject authority records. Subject authority records that are approved and valid for use have the prefix sh. The prefix sh is also used in 010 fields of newly proposed subjects that are still in process, but these records will also have the legend “[proposed]” at the end of the 1XX field.

S Hed - Subject Heading Editorial Team, CPSO

sj - One of three prefixes used in the LCCNs of subject authority records. An sj prefix indicates that the subject heading is an approved Annotated Card (juvenile) subject heading that is valid for use in bibliographic records for children's literature.

sp - One of three prefixes used in the LCCNs of subject authority records. An sp prefix in a local 019 field indicates that the subject heading is still in the proposal stage and has not yet been approved. Proposed authority records with this prefix reside only in the LCSH Master Database and the LC Database. LCCNs of proposals shown on tentative and approved weekly lists have the prefix sp.

Subfield Sw - see Control Subfield Sw

Summary of Decisions - This is the formal name for the minutes of the weekly editorial meetings, which may include notes about policies decided at the meetings, explanations of decisions taken, and frequently, lists of subdivisions to be added to the free-floating subdivision lists in the SCM. The summaries also contain announcements of new MARC language codes and changes to the MARC language code list. Summaries of decisions, if present, are found at the end of approved weekly lists posted on the CPSO Web site. They are distributed by email through SACOLIST and are cumulated online at the SACO Web site.

UF - Used For; also known as Use reference. A reference from a term that is not valid for use as a subject heading to a term that represents the valid, authorized form of the heading. Used for references are recorded in MARC 21 authority records in 4XX fields.

Weekly Lists - SACO proposals and proposals from LC catalogers are grouped on separate subject heading and classification lists that are reviewed in CPSO and considered at weekly editorial meetings. There are two versions of a weekly list: tentative and approved. Tentative (i.e., under consideration and not yet approved) lists are posted to the SACO home page at http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/tentative/twls.html
Glossary

(LCSH) and http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/ClassTentative/twlc.html (LCC) a week or two before the editorial meeting for that list. Weekly lists of new and changed subject headings and classification numbers approved by the editorial meetings are posted on the Cataloging and Acquisitions home page at http://www.loc.gov/aba/. Caution is advised in consulting weekly lists because proposed headings on tentative lists may be revised or not approved at the editorial meeting for that list, and because diacritics and special symbols do not display on either the tentative or approved lists.

Work cat. - Work cataloged. In both subject heading and classification proposals, the phrase Work cat.: precedes the citation of the work being cataloged that generated the proposal. In MARC 21 subject authority records the citation to the work cataloged is recorded in the first 670 field.
Appendix A. Additional Examples of SACO Proposals for New LCSH

The examples below provide an additional sampling of successful SACO proposals. Fields that are found on the SACO proposal form but not used in specific proposals have been omitted. Since it is not always possible to send diacritics and special characters over email, the examples follow the recommended practice of including the name of the diacritic or character in parentheses in front of the letter to which it belongs. The examples are arranged by 1XX tag, then within each tag by alphabetical order of the proposed heading.

100 (Personal Name)

008/06 Not Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a InU $b eng $c DLC
100 3 $a Eliseev family
400 3 $a Elis(left ligature)i(right ligature)ev family
670 $a (dot above)En(left ligature)t(right ligature)s. slov. biog. $b (Eliseevy; Elis(left ligature)i(right ligature)evy; Russian noble family)
670 $a Bol. (dot above)en(left ligature)t(right ligature)s. $b (Eliseev; several persons listed)
670 $a Mal. sov. (dot above)en(left ligature)t(right ligature)s. $b (Eliseev; 2 people listed)
675 $a Am. fam. names; $a Cent. pop. growth

---------------------

008/06 Not Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a NNC $c DLC
100 3 $a Gediminas, House of
400 3 $a House of Gediminas
551 $w g $a Lithuania $x Kings and rulers
670 $a Work cat.: Udl(miagkii znak)ni kn(left ligature)i(right ligature)azivstva
R(left ligature)i(right ligature)urykovychiv i Hedyminovychiv u XII-XVI st., 1996.
670 $a Britannica: $b v. 10, p. 47, under Gediminas, Grand Duke of Lithuania, c. 1275-c. 1341 (Gediminas dynasty)
670 $a Lietuvi(hacek)skoji tarybin(dot above)e encik.: $b v. 4, p. 24-25 (Gediminas)
670 $a RLIN, 26 March 1997 $b (Gediminas, House of)
952 $a SCM H 1574

Backdoor heading created by LC:

151 $a Lithuania $x Kings and rulers
Appendix A

008/06 Not Subd Geog
008/39 c
040  $a MH-P $b eng $c DLC
100 3 $a Ikshvaku dynasty
400 3 $a Sriparvatiya dynasty
551  $w g $a India $x Kings and rulers
670  $a Work cat: Rajendra Babu, B.S. Material culture of Deccan, 1999: $b subtitle
(with special reference to Satavahana-Ikshvaku period) p. 15 (out of the ruins of
the Satavahana kingdom came a dynasty known as the Ikshvakus; the puranas call
them the Sriparvatiyas; they ruled for 57 years)
675  $a Britannica Macro.

---------------

008/06 Not Subd Geog
008/39 c
040  $a Uk $b eng $c DLC
100 0 $a Jesus Christ $x Black interpretations
952  $a LC pattern: Jesus Christ--Indian interpretations

---------------

008/06 Not Subd Geog
008/39 c
040  $a NmU $b eng $c DLC
100 3 $a Restrepo family
400 3 $a L(acute)opez de Restrepo family
500 3 $a Lopez family
670  $a Work cat.: Don Marcelino Restrepo y Restrepo, su vida y su descendencia,
1999: $b front cover flap (Asociaci(acute)on Familia Restrepo; begun in 1998 by
descendants of the founders of the family in Colombia) p. 17 (Don Alonso
L(acute)opez de Restrepo, from whom descend almost all of the Restrepos in
Colombia today) p. 13 (in this epoch [c. 1700] the first surname was omitted,
simplifying to one, de Restrepo)
670  $a World biog. index, Web ed.
670  $a Hispanic surnames and family history, 1996: $b p. 245 (Restrepo) p. 300
(Restrepo or L(acute)opez de Restrepo)
675  $a Am. fam. names; $a Cent. pop. growth

Note: Change proposal must also be made to add Restrepo family as RT on the heading
Lopez family.
Appendix A

110 (Corporate Name)

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a UkOxU $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a 30 Saint Mary Axe (London, England)
410 2 $a 30 St. Mary Axe (London, England)
410 2 $a Gherkin (London, England : Building)
410 2 $a Swiss Re Tower (London, England)
550 $w g $a Office buildings $z England
670 $a Work cat.: Powell, K. 30 St Mary Axe, c2006.
670 $a 30 St Mary Axe WWW home page, Feb. 27, 2006: $b fact file (opened at the end of May 2004; private office block; the official name of the building is 30 St Mary Axe)
670 $a WordiQ.com, Feb. 27, 2006 $b (30 St Mary Axe is a building in the City of London; it has been variously nicknamed the Gherkin, the Erotic Gherkin, the Crystal Phallus and the Towering Innuendo; the primary occupant of the building is Swiss Re reinsurers which leads to the building’s other common name, the Swiss Re Tower)
670 $a GreatBuildings.com, Feb. 27, 2006 $b (30 St Mary Axe; commercial office tower, skyscraper; the Swiss Re tower, nicknamed the Gherkin for its tall, rounded, pickle-like shape)
952 $a SCM Appendix A, 15 and 16

-------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a NNC $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a 390 Fifth Avenue (New York, N.Y.)
410 2 $a Gorham Building (New York, N.Y.)
410 2 $a Russek's Furs (New York, N.Y. : Building)
550 $w g $a Commercial buildings $z New York (State)
670 $a Work cat.: Gorham Building, 1998: $b p. 1 (Gorham Building; loc. at 390 Fifth Avenue, Manhattan; built 1904-05)
670 $a AIA guide to New York City, 1988: $b p. 214 (390 Fifth Avenue; formerly Russek's Furs; originally Gorham Building)
670 $a Wolfe, G.R. New York, a guide to the metropolis, c1994: $b p. 236 (Gorham Manufacturing Company; building on south west corner of Fifth Avenue)
952 $a SCM H 1334
Appendix A

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a InU $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a Bess Meshulam Simon Music Library and Recital Center (Bloomington, Ind.)
410 2 $a Simon Music Library and Recital Center (Bloomington, Ind.)
550 $w g $a College buildings $z Indiana
550 $w g $a Library buildings $z Indiana
670 $a Work cat.: Bess Meshulam Simon Music Library and Recital Center, 1995: $b t.p. (Indiana University, School of Music)
952 $a LC pattern: Woodburn Hall (Bloomington, Ind.)
952 $a SCM H 1334

Backdoor heading also submitted (optional; LC will create if not submitted):

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a InU $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Library buildings $z Indiana

Note: College buildings $z Indiana is already set up in authority file, so a backdoor heading proposal for it is not needed.

--------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a ItFiC $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a C(grave)a Michiel delle Colonne (Venice, Italy)
410 2 $a C(grave)a Littoria (Venice, Italy)
410 2 $a C(grave)a Matteotti (Venice, Italy)
410 2 $a Littoria, C(grave)a (Venice, Italy)
410 2 $a Matteotti, C(grave)a (Venice, Italy)
410 2 $a Michiel delle Colonne, C(grave)a (Venice, Italy)
550 $w g $a Palaces $z Italy
670 $a Work cat.: 2006385172: Da C(grave)a Littoria a C(grave)a Matteotti, c2006: $b front flap (C(grave)a Michiel delle Colonne, historic palace on Grand Canal in Venice, during the fascist period called C(grave)a Littoria and after the second World War called C(grave)a Matteotti, now again with the original name)
670 $a Convegno internazionale di scienza e beni culturali (16th: 2000: Bressanone, Italy?). Abstracts del Convegno internazionale di scienza e beni culturali, anno 2000, via WWW, Apr. 20, 2006 $b (C(grave)a Michiel delle Colonne)
952 $a LC pattern: C(grave)a Granda (Venice, Italy)
Appendix A

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a Uk $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a Dunstaffnage Castle (Scotland)
550 $w g $a Castles $z Scotland
670 $a Work cat.: Grove, D. Dunstaffnage Castle & Chapel, 2004: $b p. 4
(Dunstaffnage Castle stands on a promontory on the southern shore of Loch Etive where it meets the Firth of Lorn)
670 $a Historic Scotland Web site, 26 Apr. 2006: $b places to visit (Dunstaffnage Castle)
670 $a The Internet guide to Scotland, 26 Apr. 2006: $b castles A-Z (Dunstaffnage Castle, near Oban)
670 $a Wikipedia, 26 Apr. 2006 $b (Dunstaffnage Castle is a castle ruin of Argyllshire, Scotland, 3 miles N.N.E. of Oban)
952 $a LC pattern: Drumlanrig Castle (Scotland)

-------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a DNA $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a Griffith Stadium (Washington, D.C.)
410 2 $a American League Park (Washington, D.C.)
410 2 $a Beyer's Seventh Street Park (Washington, D.C.)
410 2 $a Clark Griffith Park (Washington, D.C.)
410 2 $a National Park (Washington, D.C.)
550 $w g $a Stadiums $z Washington (D.C.)
670 $a Ballparks.com WWW site, Oct. 11, 2005 $b (Griffith Stadium; Washington, D.C.; home of the Washington Senators baseball team; original stadium opened 1891; rebuilt 1911 by Osborne Engineering; demolished, 1965; also known as American League Park, Beyer's Seventh Street Park, National Park and Clark Griffith Park)
952 $a LC pattern: Robert F. Kennedy Memorial Stadium (Washington, D.C.)

-------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a WaU $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a Harvard University $x Professional staff
410 2 $a Harvard University $x Staff, Professional
510 2 $w g $a Harvard University $x Employees
670 $a Work cat.: Noack, K.W. An assessment of the campus climate for gay, lesbian, bisexual, and transgender persons as perceived by the faculty, staff, and
Appendix A

administration at Texas A & M University, 2004: $abstr. (Texas A&M University; faculty, professional staff, and administration at the institution; professional staff members)

670 $a Toutkoushian, R.K. Analysis of gender differences in salary increases for faculty and professional and administrative staff at the University of Minnesota, 1996.


670 $a East Texas State University. East Texas State University faculty and professional staff search handbook, 1990.

670 $a Western Washington University. Exempt professional staff handbook, 1997.

670 $a Wallace, S.N. Outcomes of decisional influences among professional staff at the State University of New York at Buffalo, 1996.

681 $i Example under $a Professional employees; Universities and colleges--Professional staff

Note: Although the work being cataloged is about Texas A & M University and the subdivision --Professional staff is needed under that name heading, the subject heading proposed is Harvard University--Professional staff because Harvard University is the pattern heading for individual educational institutions. The establishment of the proposed heading makes the subdivision --Professional staff free-floating under any other appropriate individual educational institution.

The library also submits a proposal to make the subdivision --Professional staff free-floating under types of educational institutions, and to provide a general see reference for the use of the subdivision under individual educational institutions:

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a WaU $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Universities and colleges $x Professional staff
360 $i subdivision $a Professional staff $i under names of individual institutions, e.g. $a Harvard University--Professional staff
450 $a College professional staff
450 $a Professional staff members of universities and colleges
450 $a Professional staff of universities and colleges
450 $a Staff members of universities and colleges, Professional
450 $a Staff of universities and colleges, Professional
450 $a Universities and colleges $x Staff, Professional
450 $a University professional staff
550 $w g $a Universities and colleges $x Employees
Appendix A

670 $a Work cat.: Noack, K.W. An assessment of the campus climate for gay, lesbian, bisexual, and transgender persons as perceived by the faculty, staff, and administration at Texas A & M University, 2004: $b abstr. (Texas A&M University as perceived by the faculty, professional staff, and administration at the institution; professional staff members)

670 $a WaU database, Dec. 31, 2005 $b (community college faculty and professional staff; faculty and other professional staff in higher education)

670 $a OCLC, Dec. 31, 2005 $b (administrative/professional and university staff employees; faculty and professional II staff at Oklahoma State University; East Texas State University faculty and professional staff; University of Nevada System professional staff members; Western Washington University exempt professional staff; University of the Virgin Islands full-time faculty and professional staff; administrators, faculty, and professional staff members at the University of Arizona; professional staff of Chicago State University; professional staff at the State University of New York at Buffalo; faculty and professional staff members of the State University of New York; professional staff members in the Connecticut community college system; professional staff at Hastings College)

670 $a Simon Fraser University Administrative and Professional Staff Association home page, Dec. 31, 2005 $b (SFU’s administrative and professional staff)

670 $a Penn Professional Staff Assembly home page, Dec. 31, 2005 $b (administrative and technical staff who serve the teaching, research, and business missions of the University) about (All professional staff are welcome and encouraged to become an active member of PPSA)

681 $i Example under $a Professional employees

Additionally, a change proposal is made to add the general see reference shown below to the heading Professional employees:

360 $i subdivision $a Professional staff $i under individual educational institutions and under types of educational institutions, e.g. $a Harvard University--Professional staff; Universities and colleges--Professional staff

-------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 e
040 $a W1AbNL $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a Henblas (Llangristiolus, Wales)
550 $w g $a Dwellings $z Wales
670 $a An atlas of Anglesey, 1972: $b p. 75 (Henblas, Llangristiolus)
670 $a Royal Commission on Ancient and Historical Monuments of Wales and Monmouthshire. An inventory of the ancient monuments in Anglesey, 1937: $b p. 95 (Henblas, house, barn and outbuildings)
Appendix A

Note: Since a heading for village of Llangristiolus was not yet established, a name authority record for it needed to be created at the same time this subject proposal was made.

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a NNMM $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a H(circumflex)otel de Talleyrand (Paris, France)
410 2 $a H(circumflex)otel de Rothschild (Paris, France)
410 2 $a H(circumflex)otel de Saint-Florentin (Paris, France)
410 2 $a Rothschild, H(circumflex)otel de (Paris, France)
410 2 $a Saint-Florentin, H(circumflex)otel de (Paris, France)
410 2 $a Talleyrand Building (Paris, France)
550 $w g $a Dwellings $z France
550 $w g $a Embassy buildings $z France
670 $a Work cat.: Plans, coupes et (acute)el(acute)evations de l’h(circumflex)ostel de Monseigneur le Comte de St Florentin Place de Louis XV, 1984.
670 $a Embassy of the United States, Paris, France Web site, Feb. 9, 2006: $b under "About the Embassy" (The Talleyrand Building: 1767-1769, H(circumflex)otel de Saint-Florentin; 1838-1950, H(circumflex)otel de Rothschild; 1985-today, H(circumflex)otel de Talleyrand. The building houses the American Embassy Consular Services, Public and Cultural Affairs offices, several other governmental agencies and the George C. Marshall Center.)

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a Uk $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a Padiham Power Station (Padiham, England)
550 $w g $a Coal-fired power plants $z England
670 $a Work cat.: Padiham Power Station, 1993: $b t.p. (its role in 100 years of electricity generation in East Lancashire) p. 7 (the station was brought into regular use on 24 Jan. 1927) p. 19 (Padiham Power Station closed in 1993 and electricity generation by coal from power stations in East Lancashire came to an end)
670 $a Mike Clarke WWW site, 8 Nov. 2006: $b Electric Power Chronology page (the last delivery of coal to Padiham Power Station, 31 Mar. 1993; the station ceased generating in Sept. 1993)
952 $a SCM H 405
Appendix A

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a CaAEUS $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a Stabian Baths (Pompeii)
410 2 $a Terme Stabiane (Pompeii)
410 2 $a Thermae Stabianae (Pompeii)
551 $w g $a Italy $x Antiquities
550 $w g $a Public baths $z Italy
670 $a Nappo, S.C. Pompeii : guide to the lost city, c1998: $b p. 69 (The Stabian Baths ... occupy much of the southern sector of Insula VII-1.)
670 $a Richardson, L. Pompeii : an architectural history, c1988: $b p. 100 ("The Thermae Stabianae")

----------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a DGPO $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a Wills House (Gettysburg, Pa.)
550 $w g $a Dwellings $z Pennsylvania
670 $a Work cat.: U.S. Cong. House. Comm. on Resources. To expand the boundaries of the Gettysburg National Military Park to include the Wills House, report ... 2000: $b p. 2 (H.R. 2435 would expand the boundaries of Gettysburg National Military Park to include the Wills House located within the borough of Gettysburg, Pa.; it was at the Wills House where President Lincoln penciled in the last revisions and stayed before his famous Gettysburg Address)
675 $a Lippincott; $a Nat. reg. hist. pl.
952 $a LC pattern: Ansley Wilcox House (Buffalo, N.Y.)
Appendix A

130 (Uniform Title)

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a ATLA $b eng $c DLC
130 0 $a Bhagavadg(macron)it(macron)a $x Relation to the Bible
430 0 $a Bible $x Relation to the Bhagavadg(macron)it(macron)a
952 $a LC pattern: Koran--Relation to the Bible

---------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a WaU $b eng $c DLC
130 0 $a Bible $x In motion pictures
450 $a Biblical themes in motion pictures
670 $a Work cat.: Sznajderman, M. Wsp(acute)o(slash l)czesna Biblia Pauperum, c1998.
670 $a Star trek and sacred ground, c1999: $b contents (Biblical imagery in Star trek; Biblical interpretation in the Star trek universe)
680 $i Here are entered works on Biblical themes in motion pictures that are not themselves Bible films. Motion picture versions of Biblical stories are entered under $a Bible films.

Note: Mirror image scope note must also be added to heading Bible films.

---------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a UPB $b eng $c DLC
130 0 $a Bible. $p O.T. $p Isaiah $x Quotations in the Book of Mormon
430 0 $a Book of Mormon $x Quotations from Isaiah
530 0 $a Book of Mormon $x Relation to the Bible
952 $a LC pattern: Bible. O.T.--Quotations in the New Testament

The related term reference must also be established:

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a UPB $b eng $c DLC
130 0 $a Book of Mormon $x Relation to the Bible
430 0 $a Bible $x Relation to the Book of Mormon
Appendix A

530 0 $a Bible. $p O.T. $p Isaiah $x Quotations in the Book of Mormon
952 $a LC pattern: Koran--Relation to the Bible
Appendix A

150 (Topical Term)

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a Uk $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Albert Memorial Clock (Belfast, Northern Ireland)
450 $a Albert Clock (Belfast, Northern Ireland)
450 $a Albert Memorial Clock Tower (Belfast, Northern Ireland)
550 $w g $a Memorials $z Northern Ireland
550 $w g $a Towers $z Northern Ireland
670 $a Work cat.: Gallagher, L. Albert Memorial Clock, 2003?
670 $a Emporis buildings WWW site, Sept. 22, 2005 $b (Official name: Albert Memorial Clock. Type of construction: Clock tower)
670 $a Inyourpocket essential city guides WWW site, Sept. 22, 2005 $b (Albert Memorial Clock. Belfast's most prominent timepiece was built from 1865-1870 in memory of Queen Victoria's husband, Prince Albert, who died in 1862. The 43m-high landmark is famous as Belfast's very own leaning tower)
670 $a Wcities WWW site, Sept. 22, 2005 $b (The Albert Memorial Clock Tower. Known locally as "The Albert Clock")

Backdoor headings created by LC staff:

008/06 No Decision
008/39 blank
040 $a DLC $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Memorials $z Northern Ireland
952 $a Prompted by Uk

008/06 No Decision
008/39 blank
040 $a DLC $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Towers $z Northern Ireland
952 $a Prompted by Uk

----------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a WaU $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Animals $x Longevity
360 $i subdivision $a Longevity $i under individual animals and groups of animals, e.g. $a Fishes--Longevity
450 $a Animal longevity
550 $w g $a Animal life spans
550 $w g $a Longevity
670 $a Work cat.: Evolution of longevity in animals, c1987.
Appendix A


--------------

008/06 Not Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a CaAE $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Archer, Jenny (Fictitious character)
450 $a Jenny Archer (Fictitious character)
670 $a Conford, E. Can do, Jenny Archer, c1991 $b (also by the same author: A case for Jenny Archer; Jenny Archer, author; What's cooking, Jenny Archer?; Jenny Archer to the rescue; Nibble, nibble, Jenny Archer; Get the picture, Jenny Archer)

--------------

008/06 Not Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a AzTeS $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Bars (Drinking establishments) in literature
952 $a SCM H 362

--------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a CaBVa $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Box lacrosse
450 $a Boxla
450 $a Indoor lacrosse
550 $w g $a Lacrosse
670 $a Ency. of world sport, 1996: $b p. 562 (Box lacrosse, also known as boxla or indoor lacrosse, which has gained professional status, is played in ice hockey rinks during the off-season when the floor is bare)
670 $a Oxford companion to sports & games, 1975: $b p. 590 (Box lacrosse, a variation of lacrosse)
670 $a Wikipedia, Feb.16, 2006 $b (Box lacrosse (sometimes shortened to Boxla) is an indoor version of lacrosse played almost solely in Canada, chiefly in British Columbia and southern Ontario. A national senior men's lacrosse championship (the Mann Cup) has been awarded in Canada since 1901, and is the most

--------------
Appendix A

prestigious lacrosse trophy in Canada. It has been played under box lacrosse rules since 1935)

675 $a Berkshire ency. of world sport, c2005

---------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a DHMM $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Child concentration camp inmates
550 $w g $a Concentration camp inmates
670 $a Work cat.: "Dann kam die deutsche Macht": Weissrussische Kinderh(umlaut)aftlinge in deutschen Konzentrationslagern 1941-1945, c1999.
952 $a LC pattern: Child slaves

---------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a UkOxU $c DLC
150 $a Christmas shopping
550 $w g $a Shopping
670 $a Christmas shopping habits, 1997: $b p. 1 ("to assess the significance of Christmas shopping to consumers and the importance of Christmas shopping

264
habits to retailers ... Christmas is the focal point for selling many types of products")

952 $a LC pattern: Grocery shopping; Christmas cookery

--------------

008/06 Not Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a NjP $b eng $c DLC
053 0 $a BL820.C62
150 $a Cleobis (Greek mythology)
550 $w g $a Mythology, Greek
670 $a Britannica Micro.: $b v. 2, p. 244 (Biton and Cleobis; sons of Cydippe, priestess of Hera; noted for their filial devotion and athletic prowess)
670 $a Collier's $b (Cleobis and Biton)
670 $a Grant, M. Gods and mortals in classic. myth., 1973 $b (Cleobis and Biton)
670 $a Oswalt, S.G. Concise encyc. of Greek and Roman myth, 1965 $b (Cleobis and Biton)
952 $a Classification proposal faxed to Coop Sept. 28, 1999

--------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a UkCU $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Cockthrowing
450 $a Cock-throwing
550 $w g $a Amusements
670 $a Tucker, J. An earnest and affectionate address to the common people of England, concerning their usual recreations on Shrove Tuesday, 1780 $b (running-title: On the barbarous custom of cock-throwing)
670 $a Web. 3 $b (cockthrowing: "an old sport of throwing sticks at a cock tied to a stake popular esp. at Shrovetide")
670 $a OED $b (cock-throwing: "the sport of throwing sticks at a cock tied to a post ... formerly an ordinary Shrove-tide pastime")
952 $a LC pattern: Cockfighting

--------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a CoU-DA $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Collision detection (Computer animation)
450 $a Detection, Collision (Computer animation)
### Appendix A

| 550 | $w$ $g$ $a$ Computer animation |
| 670 | $a$ Microsoft computer dict.: $b$ p. 108 (The process by which a game or simulation program determines whether two objects on the screen are touching each other.) |
| 670 | $a$ Wikipedia, Dec. 14, 2005 $b$ (Collision detection: In physical simulations, video games and computational geometry, collision detection includes algorithms from checking for collision, i.e. intersection, of two given solids, to calculating trajectories, impact times and impact points in a physical simulation.) |

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>008/06 May Subd Geog</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>008/39 c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>040</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>670</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>008/06 May Subd Geog</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>008/39 c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>040</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>952</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

266
Appendix A

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a ABAU $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Computer networks $x Monitoring
450 $a Monitoring of computer networks
450 $a Network monitoring (Computer networks)
550 $w g $a Computer networks $x Management
670 $a Synapse Communications WWW site, Apr. 11, 2006 $b Network security/System administration & security p. (Network monitoring -- The purpose of network monitoring is the collection of useful information from various parts of the network so that the network can be managed and controlled using the collected information)
670 $a Wikipedia, via WWW, Apr. 11, 2006 $b (Network monitoring -- The term network monitoring describes the use of a system that constantly monitors a computer network for slow or failing systems and that notifies the network administrator in case of outages via email, pager or other alarms. It is a subset of the functions involved in network management)
670 $a Encyclopedia of computer science, 2000: $b p. 242 (Network management ... [1]t becomes increasingly important to be able to manage the network from a central location and collect network statistics for capacity planning ... Management software continues to evolve and uses ... standards to monitor the network, detect problems and take corrective action)
670 $a ImageStream Internet Solutions, Inc. Network monitoring white paper, via WWW, Apr. 11, 2006: $b p. 2 (Network monitoring has been around as long as there have been networks. Most routers, switches, and intelligent hubs collect some level of network traffic statistics ... In short, network monitoring is the ability to collect and analyze network traffic)
675 $a Dictionary of computer science, engineering, and technology, 2000; $a Dictionary of computing, 1996; $a World of computer science, 2002; $a FOLDOC, via WWW, Apr. 11, 2006
952 $a LC pattern: Electric machinery--Monitoring

------------------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a MdU $b eng $c DLC
053 0 $a TX803.R33
150 $a Cookery (Radishes)
550 $w g $a Cookery (Vegetables)
550 $a Radishes
670 $a Kenk(macron)oshoku daikon, 1986.
952 $a LC pattern: Cookery (Potatoes)
952 $a Classification proposal faxed to Coop Nov. 3, 1998

267
Appendix A

Note: Change proposal must also be made to add **Cookery (Radishes)** as RT on the heading **Radishes**.

---------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a NjP $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Coptic chants
450 $a Coptic Orthodox chants
550 $w g $a Chants
510 2 $w g $a Coptic Church $x Liturgy
670 $a Work cat.: Coptic Church. The Coptic Orthodox liturgy of St. Basil, 1998: $b p. ix, etc. (music of the Coptic Orthodox Church consists of monophonic chant, sung in Coptic or Arabic; music quite distinct from that of Arabic, Armenian, Hebrew or Greek liturgical traditions)

Backdoor heading also submitted (optional; LC will create if not submitted):

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a NjP $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a Coptic Church $x Liturgy

---------------

008/06 Not Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a CaAE $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Danny (Fictitious character : Hoff)
670 $a Work cat.: Hoff, S. Happy birthday, Danny and the dinosaur!, c1995 $b (also appears in Danny and the dinosaur, c1958; Danny and the dinosaur go to camp, c1996)
952 $a SCM H 1610

---------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a CSt $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Exploitation films
550 $w g $a Motion pictures
550 $a Sensationalism in motion pictures
670 $a Work cat.: Narcotic, c1999.
670 $a Moving image genre-form guide $b (Exploitation: Fictional or loosely
nonfictional work which offered subject matter that was taboo in mainstream cinema. Such work was frequently presented under the guise of preachy exposé, sex education, morality plays, and pseudo-documentaries. Standard topics included the dangers of premarital sex, the vice racket, nudist cults, or the dangers of narcotics. The work was made to exploit a subject for quick profit, and usually produced on a low budget by a small company. By pandering to an audience's curiosity or prurient interest, such work is on the borderline of censorship restrictions and recognizable for its emphasis on sensational aspects with little interest in artistic or social merit. Related terms, Erotic, Pornography)

670 $a Halliwell's filmgoer's & videoviewer's companion, c1995 $b (Exploitation film: a term used to describe low-budget movies of a sensational kind that either focus on some headline-making social phenomenon or attempt to cash in on a current box-office success. Sex, horror and fantasy are the predominant subject matters)

670 $a Moving image materials : genre terms, 1988 $b (Exploitation works, use Erotica)

680 $i Here are entered motion pictures of a sensational nature, usually offering subject matter taboo in mainstream cinema, usually produced on a low budget and often presented in the guise of preachy exposé or pseudo-documentaries.

Note: Change proposal must also be made to add Exploitation films as RT on the existing heading Sensationalism in motion pictures.

--------------
008/06 Not Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a NeD $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Fan fiction
450 $a Fan fic
450 $a Fanfic
550 $w g $a Fiction
670 $a Work cat.: The democratic genre, 2005: $b t.p. (Fan fiction) p. 7 (fan fiction (aka fanfic); Fan fiction is published both online and in fanzines) p. 9 (fiction based on a situation and characters originally created by someone else)
670 $a Oxford English dict. online, Apr. 4, 2006 $b (fan fiction: fiction, usually fantasy or science fiction, written by a fan rather than a professional author, esp. that based on already-existing characters from a television series, book, film, etc.; (also) a piece of such writing; also fanfic or fan fic)
675 $a Web. 3
680 $i Here are entered collections of fiction written by fans of specific authors, books, films, television series, etc., and incorporating the characters and/or settings of those authors or works.
Appendix A

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a DHMM $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Fascist aesthetics
550 $w g $a Aesthetics
670 $a Work cat.: Donahue-Bombosch, T. Building the nation: fascist mass spectacle as worker culture, 1997: $b p. iv ("fascist aesthetic")
952 $a LC pattern: Communist aesthetics

---------------

008/06 Not Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a VaVbRU $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Fathers on television
550 $w g $a Television
670 $a Work cat.: Murphy, T. Return of the king: a call for redemption of the sitcom father, 2005.
952 $a LC pattern: Mothers on television

---------------

008/06 Not Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a IeDuTC $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Gob(acute)a Saor (Legendary character)
450 $a Gobhaun Saor (Legendary character)
550 $w g $a Folklore $z Ireland
670 $a Myth, legend & romance: an encyclopedia of the Irish folk tradition, 1990: $b p. 241 (Gob(acute)an Saor famous craftsman of Irish legend, concerning whom a number of anecdotes were told throughout the country. The name seems to be a hypocoristic form of Goibhniu, the ancient god of smithcraft, while the subriquet Saor means artificer)
670 $a LC database, Apr. 16, 1998 $b (in notes: Gob(acute)an Saor; Gobhaun Saor)
675 $a Britannica; $a Ireland, 1983

---------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a NdMinS $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Henry A. Niewoehner Memorial Bell Tower (Rugby, N.D.)
Appendix A

450  $a Niewoehner Memorial Bell Tower (Rugby, N.D.)
550  $w g $a Bell towers $z North Dakota
670  $a Phone call to Niewoehner Funeral Home, May 11, 2001 $b (Henry A. Niewoehner Memorial Bell Tower; located in Rugby, N.D.)
670  $a Rugby North Dakota website, May 11, 2001 $b (Bell Tower in Rugby; 30 ft. tower containing 15 bells; tower dedicated in 1999 in memory of Henry A. Niewoehner; tower atop the Niewoehner Funeral Home)

------------------

008/06 Not Subd Geog
008/39 c
040  $a Uk $b eng $c DLC
150  $a Honey-Bear Farm (Imaginary place)
550  $w g $a Imaginary places
670  $a Work cat: Parry, A. Blossom's prize, 1998: $b t.p. (Honey-Bear Farm)
670  $a Parry, A. The picnic, 1998: $b t.p. (Honey-Bear Farm)
670  $a Parry, A. Bramble forgets, 1998: $b t.p. (Honey-Bear Farm)
675  $a Altavista WWW search, 27 Sept. 2000

------------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040  $a TxLT $b eng $c DLC
150  $a Hurricane Bonnie, 1998
450  $a Bonnie, Hurricane, 1998
550  $w g $a Hurricanes
670  $a Work cat.: Schroeder, J.L. Hurricane Bonnie wind flow characteristics, 1999: $b leaf 50 (Hurricane Bonnie made landfall near Cape Fear, NC, at 5:00 p.m. EDT on 26 August, 1998)
952  $a LC pattern: Hurricane Floyd, 1999

------------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040  $a AuSU $b eng $c DLC
150  $a Indigenous peoples $x Urban residence
450  $a Urban residence of indigenous peoples
550  $w g $a Urbanization
670  $a Work cat.: Urban life, urban culture : Aboriginal/indigenous experiences,
Appendix A

1998.
952 $a LC pattern: Indians of Central America--Urban residence

------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a CoLwJCPL $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Internet pornography
450 $a Cyberporn
450 $a Online pornography
550 $w g $a Pornography
670 $a Work cat.: Burt, D. Dangerous access, 2000: $b t.p. (Internet pornography)
670 $a Alta Vista search, Aug. 15, 2000 $b (Cyberporn; Online pornography; Porn on the Internet; Pornography on the Internet; Pornography online)
952 $a LC pattern: Internet gambling

------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a DNAL $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Irradiated strawberries
550 $w g $a Irradiated fruit
550 $w g $a Strawberries
670 $a LC pattern: Irradiated shrimp

Since the first BT on the heading above is not yet established, it also has to be proposed:

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a DNAL $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Irradiated fruit
550 $w g $a Fruit
550 $w g $a Irradiated foods
952 $a LC pattern: Irradiated seafood
Appendix A

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a NYYU-HJ $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Jews $z Spain $x History $y Expulsion, 1492
450 $a Spain $x History $y Expulsion of the Jews, 1492
450 $a Gerush Sefarad, Spain, 1492
450 $a Expulsion of the Jews, Spain, 1492
450 $a Gerush ha-Yehudim mi-Sefarad, Spain, 1492
550 $w g $a Jews $z Spain $x Persecutions $z Spain
550 $w g $a Jews $z Spain $x Migrations
551 $w g $a Spain $x Emigration and immigration
551 $w g $a Spain $x History $y Ferdinand and Isabella, 1479-1516
670 $a Work cat.: Beinhart, H. Gerush Sefarad, c1994: $b added t.p. (The Expulsion of the Jews from Spain) map on lining paper (Gerush ha-Yehudim mi-Sefarad)
670 $a Encyc. Judaica: $b vol. 28, col. 240, etc. (On March 31, 1492 edict of expulsion of the Jews from Spain was signed in Granada; Jews willing to accept Christianity were allowed to stay)
670 $a Britannica, 1992: $b vol. 28, p. 38 (in 1492 the first Inquisitor General, Thomas de Torquemada, himself from a Converso family, persuaded the Catholic kings to expell all Jews who refused to be baptized; Queen Isabella and most of her contemporaries looked at the expulsion of about 170,000 of her subjects as a pious duty)
670 $a Jewish history sourcebook, WWW site, July 25, 2000 $b (Jews expelled from Spain by Ferdinand and Isabella in Spring, 1492)

Backdoor headings created by LC staff: Jews--Persecutions--Spain; Jews--Spain--History; Jews--Spain; Jews--Spain--Migrations; Spain--Emigration and immigration

---------------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a IEN $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Kwatay language
450 $a Kuuwaataay language
450 $a Kwaatay language
550 $w g $a Atlantic languages
551 $w g $a Senegal $x Languages
670 $a Work cat.: Une grammaire pratique avec phonologie et dictionnaire de kwatay, 1992.
670 $a Ethnologue, via WWW, Aug. 25, 1999 $b (Kwata (Kuuwaataay))
670 $a Voegelin lang.: $b p. 29 (Kwaatay)
670 $a Fivaz, D. African lang., 1977: $b p. 172 (Kwaatay; Diola subgroup)
670 $a Niger-Congo languages Website, Nov. 23, 1999 $b (Kwatay)
Appendix A

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a ICLAM $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Latex garments
450 $a Latex clothing
450 $a Latex-wear
450 $a Latexwear
550 $w g $a Clothing and dress
670 $a Work cat.: Thibault, K.J. Leather and latex care : how to keep your leather and latex looking great, c1996.
670 $a The Baroness presents The rubber room & latex lounge, via WWW, May 23, 2000 $b (elegant, provocative latex fashions; latex clothing)
670 $a Eye Candy International WWW home page, May 23, 2000 $b (online latex and fetish clothing store)
670 $a House of Whacks WWW home page, May 23, 2000: $b order information (latex clothing; latex clothes; garments)
670 $a Yahoo!, May 23, 2000 $b (category: Home > Business and Economy > Shopping and Services > Sex > Apparel > Latex and Leather; rubber & latex clothing; rubber, latex and lycra clothing; latex-wear; latex fetish and fashion clothing; PVC and latex clothing; latex clothing; latex, rubber, and PVC apparel)
670 $a Alltheweb search, June 12, 2000 $b (titles: latexwear)
952 $a LC pattern: Leather garments

----------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a OCL $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Lutheran, Latvian
450 $a Latvian Lutherans
670 $a Work cat.: Vi(left hook)n(hacek)s nec(macron)in(macron)ij(macron)as pasau(macron)igi ... 1997.
680 $i Here are entered works on Latvian Lutherans living outside their native country who use their native language in church services.
952 $a LC pattern: Lutherans, Norwegian

----------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a NNC $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Memorial Chamber (Peace Tower, Parliament Buildings, Ottawa, Ont.)
510 2 $w g $a Peace Tower (Parliament Buildings, Ottawa, Ont.)
550 $w g $a Rooms $z Ontario
670 $a Work cat.: Memorial Chamber in the Peace Tower, Houses of Parliament, between 1930 and 1940: $b t.p. (Memorial Chamber in the Peace Tower; part of
the Parliament Buildings complex, Ottawa, Ontario) p. 4 (The chamber in the Peace Tower of the Houses of Parliament has been set apart as a memorial of the service and sacrifice of Canada in the Great War.)

670 $a Architecture of the Canadian Parliament, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada homepage, July 17, 2003 $b (The Parliament complex is divided into the Centre Block, the East Block, the West Block and the Peace Tower. The Peace Tower contains the Memorial Chamber which opened in 1928.)

Since the qualifier in the heading (which is also a broader term reference) is not yet established, it has to be proposed at the same time:

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a NNC $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a Peace Tower (Parliament Buildings, Ottawa, Ont.)
510 2 $w g $a Parliament Buildings (Ottawa, Ont.)
550 $w g $a Public buildings $z Ontario
670 $a Work cat.: Memorial Chamber in the Peace Tower, Houses of Parliament, between 1930 and 1940: $b t.p. (Peace Tower; part of the Parliament Buildings complex, Ottawa, Ontario)
670 $a Architecture of the Canadian Parliament, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada homepage, July 17, 2003 $b (The Parliament complex is divided into the Centre Block, the East Block, the West Block and the Peace Tower. The Peace Tower contains the Memorial Chamber which opened in 1928.)

Since the heading Parliament Buildings (Ottawa, Ont.) was already established, a proposal for it was not needed.

Backdoor heading also submitted (optional; LC will create if not submitted):

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a NNC $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Rooms $z Ontario
952 $a Made for reference hierarchy

-------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a WaU $b eng $c DLC
053 0 $a SF293.N67
150 $a North Swedish horse
450 $a Nordsvensk horse
450 $a North Swedish draft horse
450 $a North Swedish draught horse
Appendix A

450 $a NSV (Horse breed)
550 $w g $a Draft horses
550 $w g $a Horse breeds
670 $a Work cat.: Tj(umlaut)alld(acute)en, U. Breeding of the North Swedish horse, 2003; $b p. 5 (the NSV; NSV horse) p. 6 (den nordsvenska h(umlaut)asten) p. 10 (the North Swedish Draught Horse (the NSV))
670 $a EAAP-Animal Genetic Data Bank Web site, Jan. 2, 2007 $b (International breed name: North Swedish Horse. Local breed name: Nordsvensk H(umlaut)asten. Group of similar breeds: Main group Heavy-horses; Subgroup Nordic heavy horses)
670 $a Breeds of livestock Web site, Jan. 2, 2007: $b horses (North Swedish Horse. Originating from Sweden, the North Swedish Horse is a heavy draft and farm workhorse. It is of the same origin as the Dole horse of Norway, which descended from the ancient Scandinavian native horse.)
670 $a F(umlaut)oreningen Nordsvenska H(umlaut)asten English Web site, Jan. 2, 2007 $b (Along with the Gotland Pony, the North Swedish is Sweden’s only native breed of horse; North Swedish horse)
952 $a LC pattern: Clydesdale horse
952 $a Classification proposal entered in Class. Web on Jan. 2, 2007

--------------------
008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a DNA $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Operation Darby Talon, 1970
450 $a Darby Talon, Operation, 1970
550 $w g $a Vietnam War, 1961-1975 $x Campaigns
670 $a Work cat.: Combat after action report, Operation Darby Talon, Apr. 27, 1970 $b (carried out from March 12, 1970 to April 21, 1970, by the 173rd Airborne Division in the Tuy Hoa District, Phy Yen Province; mission was to secure the GVN pacification programs and provide accelerated training and assistance to Territorial Force)
670 $a Virtual Vietnam Archives operations search, Oct. 18, 2005 $b (Operation Darby Talon; carried out from March 12 to April 21, 1970, by the 3rd Battalion, 503rd Infantry of the 173d Airborne Infantry (USA); mission in the Phy Yen Province)
952 $a LC pattern: Operation Atlanta, 1967

--------------------
008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a UkOxU $b eng $c DLC
053 0 $a GN480.35 $c Anthropology
053 0 $a HQ997.5 $c Sociology
Appendix A

150 $a Polygyny
550 $w g $a Polygamy
550 $a Harems
670 $a Gould, E.D. The mystery of monogamy, 2004: $b p. 3 (rich men throughout history have tended to practise polygyny (multiple wives))
670 $a Web. 3 $b (Polygyny. A marriage form in which a man has two or more wives at the same time - contrasted with polyandry)
670 $a OED online, Feb. 14, 2005 $b (Polygyny. That form of polygamy in which one man has several wives at the same time; plurality of wives (or concubines). Corresp. to polyandry)
952 $a LC pattern: Polyandry

Note: Change proposal must also be made to add Polygyny as RT on the heading Harems. A classification proposal to establish the number HQ997.5 is also submitted.

-----------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a TxFACM $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Porta Nigra (Trier, Germany)
450 $a Black Gate (Trier, Germany)
550 $w g $a Gates $z Germany
670 $a Encyc. Brit., 15th ed.: $b under Trier (Porta Nigra; 4th cent. fortified town gate; converted for other uses in Middle Ages; since restored)
670 $a National geographic traveler, May/June 1995: $b Rhine journey, p. 53 (Porta Nigra, or Black Gate)

-----------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a MMiltC $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Racial profiling in law enforcement
450 $a Profiling, Racial, in law enforcement
550 $w g $a Law enforcement
670 $a ACLU Web site, 2 Oct. 2000: $b Racial profiling in America (also called DWB, D.W.B., "Driving while black or brown")
670 $a Advisory Board to the President's Initiative on Race Web site, 2 Oct. 2000 $b (Racial profiling by law-enforcement officials can be used in determining whether
Appendix A

a suspect can be questioned, but can lead to discrimination.

---------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a ViU $b eng $c DLC
150 $a School integration $x Massive resistance movement
450 $a Massive resistance movement against school integration
450 $a School integration $x Massive resistance movement $z Southern States
450 $a School integration $x Massive resistance movement $z United States
550 $w g $a Government, Resistance to $z Southern States $x History $y 20th century
670 $a Work cat.: The moderates' dilemma : massive resistance to school desegregation in Virginia, 1998: $b p. 1 ("...'massive resistance' to the federal courts, embodied in the 1956 Southern Manifesto ... massive resistance, interposition, and school-closing laws came to dominate the white response to Brown [v. Board of Education]) p. 43 (Feb. 1956, Va. senator Harry Byrd, Sr. first used phrase "massive resistance," organizing Southern States for massive resistance to U.S. Supreme Court-ordered school desegregation) p. 20 ("... the massive resistance path adopted by Virginia's political leaders between 1956 and 1959")
670 $a Civil rights in the United States, 2000 $b (massive resistance: on February 24, 1956, U.S. Senator Harr F. Byrd of Virginia called for "massive resistance" to the Supreme Court's school desegregation order in Brown case; over the next several months, Southern states legislatures passed laws aiming at preventing public school desegregation; in Arkansas, Governor Faubus shut down all public schools in Little Rock in 1958-59; massive resistance quietly ended in early 1960s, though in Prince Edward County, Virginia, public schools remained closed until 1964)
670 $a Massive resistance : southern opposition to the second Reconstruction, 2005.

---------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a UkLCIA $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Scottish Colourists (Group of artists)
450 $a Scottish Colorists (Group of artists)
550 $w g $a Painting, Scottish
670 $a The dict. of art, 1996: $b v. 28, p. 239 (The name was applied posthumously to S.J. Peploe, Leslie Hunter (1877-1931) and F.C.B. Cadell (1883-1937) by T.J. Honeyman in his study of 1950; later it was extended to include the work of J.D. Fergusson)
Appendix A

952 $a LC pattern: Shoreham Circle (Group of artists)

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a RPB-M $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Shakuhachi and electronic music
450 $a Electronic and shakuhachi music
670 $a Work cat.: The International Computer Music Association commission awards, 1994-96 [SR], p 1997: $b insert (Birdwing; for shakuhachi and tape)

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a SG-SiILA $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Short stories, Singapore (Chinese)
450 $a Short stories, Chinese $z Singapore
450 $a Singapore short stories (Chinese)
550 $w g $a Singapore fiction (Chinese)
952 $a LC pattern: Short stories, Singapore (English)

Since the broader term is not yet established, it must be submitted as a separate proposal:

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a SG-SiILA $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Singapore fiction (Chinese)
450 $a Chinese fiction $z Singapore
550 $w g $a Singapore literature (Chinese)
952 $a LC pattern: Singapore fiction (English)

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a TxCM $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Texas A&M Bonfire Collapse, College Station, Tex., 1999
450 $a Aggie Bonfire Collapse, College Station, Tex., 1999
450 $a Aggie Bonfire Tragedy, College Station, Tex., 1999

279
Appendix A

Because a heading for **Bonfires** does not yet exist and this term is used as the main heading of the BT, it must also be established, with authority research to justify the choice of heading:

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 blank
040 $a DLC $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Bonfires
550 $w g $a Fires
670 $a Web. 3 $b (bonfire: a great open-air fire to mark a religious anniversary or some public event, as a political rally, a community outing, a victory celebration, the birthday of a famous person)

Two backdoor headings are also created as a result of the first proposal:

008/06 No Decision
008/39 blank
040 $a DLC $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Bonfires $x Accidents $z Texas

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 blank
040 $a DLC $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Bonfires $x Accidents

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a ViU $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Tunnels $x Law and legislation
550 $w g $a Highway law
670 $a Work cat.: Rules and regulations covering the use of the Big Walker Mountain
and East River tunnels, Interstate Route 77, 1970.

Note: SCM H 1154.5 instructs catalogers to "establish editorially new uses of the subdivision --Law and legislation." The exception, discussed in SCM H 1705, is when the subdivision has been established under a pattern heading, for example, Cancer--Law and legislation. In those cases, the subdivision is free-floating under headings governed by that pattern.

---------------

008/06 Not Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a Uk $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Ukko (Finnish deity)
450 $a Ukko-Ylijumala (Finnish deity)
450 $a Ylijumala (Finnish deity)
550 $w g $a Gods, Finnish
670 $a Work cat.: Salo, U. Ukko, 2006: $b t.p. (Ukko, the God of thunder of the ancient Finns and his Indo-European family)
670 $a Godchecker.com WWW site, 13 April 2006: $b Ukko (Once the top God of Finland, he specialises in storms and lightning - also known as Ylijumala, Ukko-Ylijumala)
952 $a LC pattern: Thor (Norse deity)

Because the BT Gods, Finnish does not yet exist, it must be established through a separate proposal:

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a Uk $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Gods, Finnish
450 $a Finnish gods
670 $a Work cat.: Salo, U. Ukko, 2006: $b t.p. (Ukko, the God of thunder of the ancient Finns and his Indo-European family)
670 $a Godchecker.com WWW site, 13 April 2006 $b (Complete list of Finnish Gods)
952 $a LC pattern: Gods, Norse

---------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a InIU-L $b eng $c DLC
450 $a Decade for Human Rights Education, United Nations, 1995-2004
550 $w g $a Special decades
Appendix A


-------------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a NNC $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Venetian Room (972 Fifth Avenue, New York, N.Y.)
510 2 $w g $a 972 Fifth Avenue (New York, N.Y.)
550 $w g $a Reception rooms $z New York (State)
670 $a Phone call to Mr. Vigne, Director of Visual Arts, Offices of the Cultural Services of the French Embassy, June 7, 2000 $b (Venetian Room is in the building belonging to the French Consulate; the building is also known as Offices of the Cultural Services of the French Embassy and 972 Fifth Avenue)
675 $a Avery index online, April 2, 2000; $a Grove dict. art online, April 2, 2000; $a Lowe. Stanford White's New York, 1999; $a Wodehouse. White of McKim, Mead and White, 1988

Headings created for reference hierarchy:

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a NNC $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a 972 Fifth Avenue (New York, N.Y.)
410 2 $a Payne Whitney House (New York, N.Y.)
550 $w g $a Public buildings $z New York (State)
670 $a Phone call to Mr. Vigne, Director of Visual Arts, Offices of the Cultural Services of the French Embassy, June 7, 2000 $b (French Consulate; the building is also known as Offices of the Cultural Services of the French Embassy or Cultural Services of the French Embassy and 972 Fifth Avenue; formerly Payne Whitney House)
670 $a AIA guide to New York City, c1988: $b p. 375 (Cultural Services, Embassy of France, formerly Payne Whitney residence)
670 $a A guide to New York City landmarks, c1979: $b p. 33 (French Embassy, Cultural, Press and Informational Services, originally Payne Whitney House; erected from plans of 1902 by William Kendall of the firm McKim, Mead & White; completed 1906 for Whitney; Republic of France acquired building in 1952)
675 $a Avery index online, April 2, 2000; $a Grove dict. art online, April 2, 2000; $a
952 $a SCM H 1334
952 $a Not the same as the French Consulate building located at 934 Fifth Avenue, New York, N.Y.

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a NNC $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Reception rooms
550 $w g $a Rooms
670 $a Web. 3.
670 $a LC database, June 22, 2000.
670 $a AAT online, April 3, 2000 $b (reception rooms)
670 $a Grove dict. art online, April 3, 2000: $b under USA, Interior decoration, after 1900 (reception rooms)
670 $a LC pattern: Dining rooms

Backdoor heading created by LC:

150 $a Reception rooms $z New York (State)

-----------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a WaU $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Wetland restoration
450 $a Restoration of wetlands
450 $a Wetlands $x Restoration
450 $a Wetlands restoration
550 $w g $a Restoration ecology
550 $w g $a Wetland management
670 $a LC database, July 26, 1999 $b (titles: Wetland restoration and enhancement in California; Wetland creation and restoration; Wetland restoration, flood pulsing, and disturbance dynamics; Potential sites for wetland restoration, enhancement, and creation; Proceedings of the ... annual Conference on Wetlands Restoration and Creation; Restoration of temperate wetlands)
952 $a LC pattern: Watershed restoration

Additional heading required for reference hierarchy:
Appendix A

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a WaU $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Wetland management
450 $a Wetlands $x Management
450 $a Wetlands management
550 $w g $a Ecosystem management
952 $a LC pattern: Watershed management

---------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a OkS $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Yellow in interior decoration
550 $w g $a Interior decoration
952 $a LC pattern: Blue in interior decoration

---------------

008/06 May Subd Geog
008/39 c
040 $a ABAU $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Zeolite catalysts
550 $w g $a Catalysts
670 $a Work cat.: Lotus, A.F. Study of an oxidation catalyst system for treating diesel exhaust from mobile sources, 2004: $b abstr. (This investigation attempts to develop and test a catalyst (copper ion-exchanged ZSM-5 zeolite) system for its ability to effectively treat diesel exhaust gas. During the first phase of this investigation, catalyst/zeolites were used)
670 $a McGraw-Hill dictionary of scientific and technical terms, 2003 $b (zeolite catalyst -- [inorganic chemistry] -- Hydrated aluminum and calcium (or sodium) silicates ... made with controlled porosity; used as catalytic cracking catalyst in petroleum refineries, or loaded with catalyst for other chemical reactions)
670 $a Academic Press dictionary of science and technology, 1992 $b (zeolite catalyst -- chemical engineering -- a porous material, natural or synthetic, consisting of hydrated silicates of aluminum and sodium or calcium; used as a catalyst in petroleum cracking)
670 $a Encyclopedia of physical science and technology, 2002: $b v. 9, p. 759 (Zeolites are applied as ... catalysts for a variety of chemical processes)
670 $a Kumar, N. Zeolites and mesoporous molecular sieves, via WWW, Jan. 16, 2007 $b (Besides the petrochemical industry, zeolites are potential catalysts for synthesis of fine chemicals and for the removal of emissions from motor vehicles and stationary sources)
952 $a LC pattern: Montmorillonite catalysts
151 (Geographic Name)

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a MdU $b eng $c DLC
151 $a Alexanderplatz (Berlin, Germany)
451 $a Alex (Berlin, Germany : Plaza)
550 $w g $a Plazas $z Germany
667 $a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
670 $a Work cat.: Alexanderplatz, städtebaulicher Ideen Wettbewerb, 1994: $b p. 8 
(called "Alex" by Berliners)
670 $a Britannica Macro.: $b map of Berlin (Alexanderplatz)
670 $a Fodor's Germany, 1995: $b p. 503, etc. (Alexanderplatz; named after Czar 
Alexander I)

---------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a IeDuTC $b eng $c DLC
151 $a Belfast (Northern Ireland) $x History $y Bombardment, 1941
450 $a Belfast Blitz, Belfast, Northern Ireland, 1941
550 $w g $a Bombing, Aerial $z Northern Ireland
670 $a Work cat.: Belfast is burning 1941 : the story of the assistance given by the 
emergency services from Eire following the German bombing of Belfast, 2002.
670 $a Enc. of Ireland, 2003 $b (Belfast blitz (1941) ... 7/8 Apr., 15 Apr. (900 killed), 
4/5 May)
952 $a LC pattern: Dresden (Germany)--History--Bombardment, 1945

---------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a WaU $b eng $c DLC
151 $a Bruneau River Watershed (Nev. and Idaho)
550 $w g $a Watersheds $z Idaho
550 $w g $a Watersheds $z Nevada
670 Work cat.: Varricchione, J.T. Annual monitoring report, 1997 : Bruneau hot-
sping springsnail (Pyrgulopsis bruneauensis), 1998: $b p. 62 (Bruneau River 
drainage)
781 0 $z Bruneau River Watershed (Nev. and Idaho)

Headings for watersheds are established by adding the term Watershed to the heading 
for the name of the river or lake (see SCM H 800 sec. 9). If the river or lake is not yet 
established, it must also be established at the same time. Since Bruneau River has not yet 
been established, an additional SACO proposal is necessary:
Appendix A

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a WaU $b eng $c DLC
151 $a Bruneau River (Nev. and Idaho)
451 $a Bruneau Creek (Nev. and Idaho)
451 $a Bruneau River, West Fork (Nev. and Idaho)
451 $a Brunneau Creek (Nev. and Idaho)
451 $a West Fork, Bruneau River (Nev. and Idaho)
550 $w g $a Rivers $z Idaho
550 $w g $a Rivers $z Nevada
670 $a GNIS, Dec. 18, 2000 $b (Bruneau River, stream, Owyhee Co., Idaho and Elko Co., Nev.; variant names: Bruneau Creek, Brunneau Creek, West Fork Bruneau River)
670 $a Columbia gaz., c1998 $b (Bruneau River, NE Nev. and SW Idaho; rises in E Elko co., Nev., 35 mi/56 km NW of Wells; flows generally N through Humboldt Natl. Forest, into Owyhee co., Idaho; receives Jarbidge R., from SSE, and Clover Creek (East Fork), then NNW past Bruneau to Snake R. (C.J. Strike Reservoir) 16 mi/26 km SW of Mountain Home)
781 0 $z Bruneau River (Nev. and Idaho)

---------------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a WaU $b eng $c DLC
151 $a Callisto (Satellite) $x Geology
550 $w g $a Astrogeology
952 $a LC pattern: Mars (Planet)--Geology

---------------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a IeDuTC $b eng $c DLC
151 $a Carlingford Lough (Northern Ireland and Ireland)
451 $a Cairlinn, Loch (Northern Ireland and Ireland)
451 $a Loch Cairlinn (Northern Ireland and Ireland)
550 $w g $a Inlets $z Ireland
550 $w g $a Inlets $z Northern Island
Appendix A

781 0 $z Carlingford Lough (Northern Ireland and Ireland)

--------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040  $a CaOONL $b eng $c DLC
151  $a Chilliwack River Ecological Reserve (B.C.)
550  $w g $a Ecological reserves $z British Columbia
670  $a British Columbia Ecological Reserves WWW site, Aug. 24, 2000 $b (Chilliwack River Ecological Reserve, "Mature alluvial forest with large western red cedars; hybrid spruces")
670  $a Protected Areas of British Columbia Act. Bill 17. Certified correct as amended in Committee of the Whole on the 12th day of June, 2000 $b ("Chilliwack River Ecological Reserve established by Order in Council 699/80")
670  $a British Columbia Parks WWW site, Aug. 24, 2000 $b (Chilliwack Lake Provincial Park and Chilliwack River Ecological Reserve)
675  $a BC Geographical Names Information System WWW site, Aug. 24, 2000; $a Querying Canadian geographical names WWW site, Aug. 24, 2000; $a GEOnet, Aug. 24, 2000
781 0 $z British Columbia $z Chilliwack River Ecological Reserve

--------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040  $a Uk $b eng $c DLC
151  $a Finland $x History $y Club War, 1596-1597
450  $a Club War, Finland, 1596-1597
450  $a Cudgel War, Finland, 1596-1597
451  $a Finland $x History $y Cudgel War, 1596-1597
550  $w g $a Peasant uprisings $z Finland
670  $a Work cat: Haavikko, P. Nuijasota, c1996.
670  $a Singleton, F. A short history of Finland, 1998: $b p. 34 (Club War, 1597; a rising of Finnish peasants)
670  $a Jutikkala, E. A history of Finland, c1996: $b p. 136 (Club War, 1596-1597; rebellion of Finnish farmers led by Duke Charles against Klaus Fleming, royal governor of Finland)
670  $a Klinge, M. A brief history of Finland, 1988: $b p. 29 (Club, i.e. 'cudgel', War, 1596-1597)
675  $a Britannica Macro.
952  $a SCM H 1200
Appendix A

Backdoor heading established by LC:

008/06 No Decision
008/39 blank
040 $a DLC $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Peasant uprisings $z Finland
952 $a Prompted by Uk

---------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a FU $b eng $c DLC
151 $a Fisherman's Wharf (San Francisco, Calif.)
451 $a Wharf Number 1 (San Francisco, Calif.)
550 $w g $a Shopping centers $z California
550 $w g $a Wharves $z California
667 $a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
670 $a GNIS, Nov. 24, 1999 $b (Fishermans Wharf, locale, Calif., San Francisco Co., variant names: Fisherman's Wharf, Wharf Number 1)
670 $a Fisherman's Wharf Merchants Association WWW home page, Dec. 29, 1999 $b ("... San Francisco's most popular destination ... historic waterfront, delicious seafood, spectacular sights, and unique shopping ...")

Backdoor heading created by LC:

008/06 No Decision
008/39 blank
040 $a DLC $b eng $c DLC
150 $a Shopping centers $z California
952 $a Prompted by FU

---------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a UkCU $b eng $c DLC
151 $a France $x Intellectual life $x American influences
551 $w g $a United States $x Civilization
952 $a LC pattern: France--Intellectual life--British influences; France--Intellectual life--Italian influences
Appendix A

451  $a Roebling Suspension Bridge (Cincinnati, Ohio, and Covington, Ky.)
551  $w g $a Bridges $z Kentucky
551  $w g $a Bridges $z Ohio
670  $a The Ohio Bridge, c1939: Sb p. 164 (Covington and Cincinnati Suspension Bridge)
670  $a GNIS, May 18, 2006 $b (John A. Roebling Bridge, Hamilton County, OH; 39deg.05min.33sec.N, 84deg.30min.35sec.W)
781  0 $z John A. Roebling Bridge (Cincinnati, Ohio, and Covington, Ky.)

---------------
008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040  $a WaU $b eng $c DLC
151  $a John F. Kennedy Space Center Region (Fla.)
451  $a Kennedy Space Center Region (Fla.)
781  0 $z Florida $z John F. Kennedy Space Center Region

Note: Instructions for establishing headings for regions based on name headings of corporate bodies that are not jurisdictions are found in SCM H 760, sec. 5.

---------------
008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040  $a MH-P $b eng $c DLC
151  $a Lewis Canyon (Val Verde County, Tex.)
550  $w g $a Canyons $z Texas
670  $a GNIS, Jan. 31, 2000 $b (Lewis Canyon, Val Verde county, Tex., 29deg.51min.52sec.N, 101deg.24min.09sec.W; Lewis Canyon, Taylor county, Tex., 32deg.19min.40sec.N, 99deg.57min.40sec.W)
781  0 $z Texas $z Lewis Canyon (Val Verde County)

---------------
008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040  $a WaU $b eng $c DLC
151  $a Memphremagog, Lake (Qu(acute)ebec and Vt.)
451  $a Lake Memphremagog (Qu(acute)ebec and Vt.)
550  $w g $a Lakes $z Qu(acute)ebec (Province)
550  $w g $a Lakes $z Vermont
Appendix A

670  $a Columbia gaz. of North Amer., via WWW, Feb. 2, 2004 $b (Memphremagog, Lake, in S Que., Canada, and N Vt., Mainly in Que. Lake is c.30 mi/48 km long, with a max. width of 4 mi/6 km. Drains through Magog R. and L. Magog into St. Francis R., Que.)
670  $a GNIS, Feb. 2, 2004 $b (Memphremagog, Lake, lake, elevation: 682, Vermont, Orleans Co.)
670  $a GEOnet, Feb. 2, 2004 $b (Memphremagog, Lake, LK, Canada, Quebec, 45deg.05min.00sec.N 072deg.16min.00sec.W)
670  $a Web. geog. $b (Memphremagog, Lake. Lake, extending across U.S.-Canada border from N Vermont into S Quebec; ab. 30 mi (48 km) long (7 mi. or 11 km. in Vermont) and from 1 to 4 mi. (2 to 6 km.) wide; its outlet flows into the St. Francis River, Quebec)
781  0 $z Memphremagog, Lake (Que(acute)ebec and Vt.)

--------------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040  $a WaU $b eng $c DLC
151  $a Meridian Avenue (Seattle and Shoreline, Wash.)
451  $a Meridian Avenue North (Seattle and Shoreline, Wash.)
550  $w g $a Streets $z Washington (State)
670  $a AAA (Organization : U.S.). Seattle, Washington, c2005: $b map recto (Meridian Ave N; begins at Gas Works Park at N Northlake Way in Seattle, runs north, and ends in Shoreline at N 205th St (King Co./Snohomish Co. line); continues in Snohomish Co. in Edmonds as 76th Ave W)
670  $a Mapquest Web site, Feb. 17, 2006 $b (Meridian Ave N; begins in Seattle at N Northlake Way at boundary of Gas Works Park and runs north through Seattle and through Shoreline; ends in Shoreline at N 205th St at the King Co./Snohomish Co. boundary; street continues in Snohomish Co. as 76th Ave W)
781  0 $z Washington (State) $z Meridian Avenue (Seattle and Shoreline)

--------------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040  $a WaU $b eng $c DLC
151  $a Metropolitan Tract (Seattle, Wash.)
451  $a Denny’s Knoll (Seattle, Wash.)
451  $a Metro Tract (Seattle, Wash.)
451  $a Metropolitan Tract of the University of Washington (Seattle, Wash.)
451  $a Old University Site (Seattle, Wash.)
451  $a University Tract (Seattle, Wash.)
Appendix A

550  $w g $a Real property $z Washington (State)
510 2 $w g $a University of Washington $x Endowments
667  $a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
670  $a Work cat.: Hines, N.O. Denny’s knoll : a history of the Metropolitan tract of the University of Washington, c1980: $b pref. (piece of land once a campus and now a public property at the commercial center of Seattle; ten-acre private gift that has remained a public trust, a university land endowment; the Metropolitan tract is a state property developed by private corporations under lease terms; Metropolitan Building Company left its name on the property) p. 35 (Old University Site) p. 61 (tract of ten acres which was formerly the campus of the University of Washington) p. 80 (University Tract)
670  $a HistoryLink.org, Mar. 31, 2006: $b Ryan, James M. (UNICO Properties manages the 10-acre parcel of property in the heart of downtown Seattle owned by the University of Washington and known as the Metropolitan Tract) Olympic Hotel (Formerly called "Denny’s Knoll," the Metropolitan Tract was a four-block area of downtown donated by Arthur Denny in 1861 for the Territorial University. The University of Washington Board of Regents continued to own the tract after the campus relocated north of Portage Bay in 1895. The area grew in value as Seattle’s downtown expanded north from Pioneer Square, and after several false steps, the Regents leased it to the Metropolitan Building Company (MBC) in 1904 to develop it in trust for the University over the next 50 years. (The Tract is now managed by Unico.))
670  $a Sykes, T. University of Washington report on Metropolitan Tract, 2000: $b attachment B, pp. 1-2 (In 1860, the Legislative Assembly of the Washington Territory est. a university in Seattle, if ten acres were granted from private owners. That land, in what is now downtown Seattle, became the original site of the University of Washington. In 1895, the university moved to its present location. The state retained ownership of the original acreage; however, the University’s Board of Regents has developed and managed this "Metropolitan Tract" on behalf of the state since then; Metro Tract)
670  $a The Metropolitan Tract of the University of Washington, 1961: $b v. 1, vii (The Metropolitan Tract of the University of Washington is the ten-acre plot of land in downtown Seattle on which the first University building was erected in 1861; property has been preserved as a University endowment)
675  $a GNIS, Mar. 31, 2006

Backdoor headings created by LC:

008/06 No Decision
008/39 blank
040  $a DLC $b eng $c DLC
150  $a Real property $z Washington (State)
952  $a Prompted by WaU
Appendix A

008/06 No Decision
008/39 blank
040 $a DLC $b eng $c DLC
110 2 $a University of Washington $x Endowments
952 $a Prompted by WaU

---------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a MH-P $b eng $c DLC
151 $a Monnikerede (Extinct city)
551 $w g $a Belgium $x Antiquities
550 $w g $a Extinct cities $z Belgium
670 $a Work cat.: Hillewaert, B. La petite ville de Monnikerede, 1986: $b p. 5
(Monnikerede, a Medieval village that was abandoned) p. 17 (Monnikerede, an
archaeological site)
675 $a Archaeological atlas of the world, c1975; $a Web. geog.; $a Columbia
gazetteer of the world, 1998
781 0 $z Belgium $z Monnikerede (Extinct city)

---------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a OrU $b eng $c DLC
151 $a Oregon, Eastern
451 $a Eastern Oregon
670 $a Work cat.: Arts East, summer 2000 $b (Eastern Oregon)
670 $a Beecherl, J.M. A social profile of Eastern Oregon counties, 1975 $b (includes
the following counties: Hood River, Wasco, Sherman, Jefferson, Deschutes,
Crook, Klamath, Lake, Gilliam, Morrow, Umatilla, Grant, Wheeler, Union,
Baker, Wallowa, Harney, Malheur)
670 $a Worldmark encyc. of the states, c1995: $b p. 499 ("The Cascade Range,
extending north-south, divides Oregon into distinct eastern and western regions")
670 $a Oregon attractions website, Feb. 9, 2001 $b (Eastern Oregon; takes up about
half (1/2) of Oregon's geography)
backbone of Oregon and divides the state into two broad regions, eastern Oregon
and western Oregon.")
675 $a GNIS; $a Web. geog.; $a Lippincott
781 0 $z Oregon, Eastern
952 $a LC pattern: Washington (State), Western
952 $a SCM H 760

293
Appendix A

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a UkOxU $b eng $c DLC
151 $a Palaeartic
451 $a Palaeartic
550 $w g $a Ecological zones
550 $w g $a Life zones
670 $a Web. 3 $b (palaeartic or palaeartic: of, relating to, or being a biogeographic region or subregion that includes Europe, Asia north of the Himalayas, northern Arabia, and Africa north or the Sahara)
670 $a WordiQ.com, Jan. 10, 2006 $b (The Palearctic or Palaearctic is one of the eight ecozones dividing the Earth surface; physically, the Palearctic is the largest ecozone. It includes the terrestrial ecoregions of Europe, Asia north of the Himalaya foothills, northern Africa, and the northern and central parts of the Arabian Peninsula)
670 $a American heritage dictionary $b (Pal earctic: of or relating to the biogeographic region that includes Europe, the northwest coast of Africa, and Asia north of the Himalaya mountains, especially with respect to distribution of animals)
781 0 $z Palearctic

---------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a SG-SiILA $b eng $c DLC
151 $a Singapore $x History $y 1819-1867
670 $a Work cat.: Buckley, C.B. Anecdotal history of old times in Singapore : from the foundation of the Settlement under the honourable the East India Company on February 6th, 1819 to the transfer of the Colonial Office as part of the colonial possessions of the Crown on April 1st, 1867, 1969.
670 $a Encyc. Americana: $b v. 24, p. 841 (Singapore's modern history begins with an Englishman, Thomas Stamford Raffles. In 1819 Raffles acquired the island from the Malay Sultan of Johor on behalf of the British East India Company. The British colonial office began in 1867 to administer the island directly.)

---------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a MH $b eng $c DLC
151 $a Supernova 1054
451 $a SN 1054 (Astronomy)
451 $a SN1054 (Astronomy)
551 $w g $a Crab Nebula
550 $w g $a Supernovae
This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.


Weigert, A. Concise encyc. of ast., 1976 $b$ (its residue is the Crab Nebula)

---

$\text{LC pattern: Supernova 1987A}$

---

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 $a$ WaU $b$ eng $c$ DLC

151 $a$ Tri-Cities (Wash.)

451 $a$ Tri-City (Wash.)


670 $a$ Pasco Chamber of Commerce. Tri-Cities street and points of interest map, 1999?


670 $a$ Tri-Cities Visitor & Convention Bureau home page, Aug. 15, 2003 $b$ (Kennewick, Pasco, and Richland)

670 $a$ Columbia gaz. of the world, c1998 $b$ (in entry for Richland, Wash.: one of the Tri-Cities (a fast-growing metropolis) along with Pasco and Kennewick; in entry for Pasco, Wash.: one of the Tri-Cities; with Kennewick and Richland it forms the fast-growing Tri-City area that developed during World War II, when the Dept. of Energy's Hanford Works were constructed nearby)

670 $a$ Tri-City herald, Aug. 15, 2003, viewed via WWW $b$ (Kennewick, Pasco, and Richland, Washington)

670 $a$ City of Pasco home page, Aug. 15, 2003: $b$ about Pasco/recreation (the area offers professional sports teams: the Tri-City Americans Hockey Team and Tri-City Dust Devils Single A Baseball)

675 $a$ GNIS, Aug. 15, 2003

681 | Here are entered works discussing collectively the cities of Kennewick, Pasco, and Richland, Washington.

781 0 | $a$ Washington (State) $a$ Tri-Cities

952 $a$ LC pattern: Quad Cities (Ill. and Iowa)

---

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 $a$ WaU $b$ eng $c$ DLC

151 $a$ Washington State Route 520 (Wash.)

451 $a$ Route 520 (Wash.)

451 $a$ S.R. 520 (Wash.)

451 $a$ SR 520 (Wash.)

451 $a$ State Route 520 (Wash.)
Appendix A

550 $w g $a Roads $z Washington (State)
670 $a Wikipedia, Feb. 2, 2006 $b (Washington State Route 520 is a freeway in the state of Washington, U.S.A. It extends 12.82 miles from Seattle in the west to Redmond in the east.)
670 $a Washington State highways web site, Feb. 2, 2006 $b (State Route 520. Length: 14 miles. Type: Freeway entire distance. SR-520 originates at I-5 in Seattle and crosses Lake Washington over the Evergreen Point Floating Bridge. It intersects I-405 in Bellevue and continues east into Redmond, ending at SR-202)
675 $a GNIS, Feb. 2, 2006
781 0 $z Washington (State) $z Washington State Route 520

----------------

008/06 No Decision
008/39 c
040 $a Uk $b eng $c DLC
151 $a Wren’s Nest National Nature Reserve (Dudley, England)
550 $w g $a National parks and reserves $z England
550 $w g $a Natural areas $z England
667 $a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
670 $a Work cat.: Cutler, A. Wren’s Nest National Nature Reserve, 1990: $b inside front cover (the West Midlands’ most important and popular geological site)
670 $a English Nature web site, 26 Apr. 2006: $b national nature reserves (Wren’s Nest NNR is an urban geological site managed by Dudley Metropolitan Borough Council)
670 $a Dudley Metropolitan Borough Council web site, 26 Apr. 2006: $b nature reserves (Wren’s Nest National Nature Reserve, Dudley)
## Appendix B. MARC Organization Codes Used in Examples

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABAU</td>
<td>University of Alabama at Birmingham</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATLA</td>
<td>American Theological Library Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuSU</td>
<td>University of Sydney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AzTeS</td>
<td>Arizona State University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaAE</td>
<td>Edmonton (Alta.) Public Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaAEUS</td>
<td>University of Alberta, Special Collections Dept.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaBVa</td>
<td>Vancouver (B.C.) Public Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaOONL</td>
<td>National Library of Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoLwJCPL</td>
<td>Jefferson County (Colo.) Public Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoU-DA</td>
<td>University of Colorado, Denver Auraria Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSfA</td>
<td>California Academy of Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSSt</td>
<td>Stanford University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DGPO</td>
<td>U.S. Government Printing Office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHMM</td>
<td>U.S. Holocaust Memorial Museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC</td>
<td>U.S. Library of Congress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA</td>
<td>U.S. National Archives and Records Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNAL</td>
<td>U.S. National Agricultural Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FU</td>
<td>University of Florida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICLAM</td>
<td>Leather Archives &amp; Museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IeDuTC</td>
<td>University of Dublin, Trinity College</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEN</td>
<td>Northwestern University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InIU-L</td>
<td>Indiana University-Purdue University Indianapolis, Law Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InU</td>
<td>Indiana University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ItFiC</td>
<td>Casalini Libri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LiViLNB</td>
<td>Martynas Mažvydas National Library of Lithuania</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MdU</td>
<td>University of Maryland, College Park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MH</td>
<td>Harvard University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MH-A</td>
<td>Harvard University, Arnold Arboretum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MH-P</td>
<td>Harvard University, Peabody Museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMiltC</td>
<td>Curry College</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MU</td>
<td>University of Massachusetts, Amherst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NcD</td>
<td>Duke University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NdMinS</td>
<td>Minot State University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NjP</td>
<td>Princeton University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NmU</td>
<td>University of New Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NNC</td>
<td>Columbia University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NNC-EA</td>
<td>Columbia University, C.V. Starr East Asian Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NNMM</td>
<td>Metropolitan Museum of Art</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NNYU-HJ</td>
<td>Yeshiva University, Gottesman Library of Hebraica/Judaica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OC</td>
<td>Public Library of Cincinnati and Hamilton County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCI</td>
<td>Cleveland (Ohio) Public Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OkS</td>
<td>Oklahoma State University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrU</td>
<td>University of Oregon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHC</td>
<td>Haverford College</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RPB-M</td>
<td>Brown University, Music Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG-SiILA</td>
<td>Singapore Integrated Library Automation Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TxCM</td>
<td>Texas A &amp; M University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TxFACM</td>
<td>Amon Carter Museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TxLT</td>
<td>Texas Tech University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TxU</td>
<td>University of Texas, Austin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uk</td>
<td>British Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UkCU</td>
<td>University of Cambridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UkLCIA</td>
<td>Courtauld Institute of Art</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UkOxU</td>
<td>Oxford University, Bodleian Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VaVbRU</td>
<td>Regent University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ViU</td>
<td>University of Virginia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WaElC</td>
<td>Central Washington University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WaU</td>
<td>University of Washington</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WiAbNL</td>
<td>National Library of Wales</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>